

UNIT 1: FRIENDSHIP

	VOCABULARY & WORDFORM	
1	acquaintance (n)	người quen
2	changeable (adj)	có thể thay đổi
3	constancy (n)	sự kiên định
4	constant (adj)	kiên định
5	enthusiasm (n)	lòng nhiệt tình
6	exist (v)	tồn tại
7	give-and-take (n)	sự nhường nhịn
8	honest (adj)	trung thực
9	influence (v)	ảnh hưởng
10	lasting (adj)	lâu bền
11	be loyal to (adj)	trung thành
12	loyalty (n)	lòng trung thành
13	rumour (n)	tin đồn
14	Keep a secret (n)	giữ bí mật
15	selfish (adj)	ích kỷ
16	sense of humour (n)	óc hài hước
17	suspicion (n)	sự hoài nghi
18	suspicious (adj)	đa nghi
19	sympathy (n)	sự cảm thông
20	trust (n, v)	tin tưởng
21	uncertain (adj)	không chắc chắn
22	unselfishness (n)	tính không ích kỷ
	PHRASES	
23	be incapable (of) (adj)	không thể
24	be based on (exp)	dựa vào
25	be concerned (with) (adj)	
26	take up (v)	đề cập đến

UNIT 2: PERSONAL EXPERIENCES

	VOCABULARY & WORDFORM	
1	affect (v)	ảnh hưởng
2	appreciate (v)	trân trọng
3	attitude (n)	thái độ
4	break out (v)	xảy ra bất thành linh
5	complain (v)	phàn nàn
6	complaint (n)	lời phàn nàn

7	embarrassing (adj)	ngượng ngùng
8	experience (n)	trải nghiệm
9	idol (n)	thần tượng
10	imitate (v)	bắt chước
11	scream (v)	la hét
12	shy (adj)	mắc cỡ, bẽn lẽn
13	sneaky (adj)	lén lút
14	unforgettable (adj)	không thể quên
	PHRASES	
15	glance at (v)	liếc nhìn
16	grow up (v)	lớn lên
17	make a fuss (v)	làm ầm ĩ
18	set off (v)	lên đường
19	turn away (v)	quay đi, bỏ đi

UNIT 3: A PARTY

	VOCABULARY & WORDFORM	
1	accidentally (adv)	tình cờ
2	candle (n)	đèn cây, nến
3	celebrate (v)	tổ chức, làm lễ kỷ niệm
4	decorate (v)	trang trí
5	decoration (n)	sự/đồ trang trí
6	The 50 th golden anniversary (n) (=golden wedding)	lễ kỷ niệm
7	judge (n)	thẩm phán
8	milestone (n)	sự kiện quan trọng
9	The 25 th silver anniversary (n) (=silver wedding)	lễ kỷ niệm
	PHRASES	
10	blow out (v)	thổi tắt
11	give s.th to s.o	Cho, tặng
12	get into trouble (exp)	gặp rắc rối
13	tidy up (v)	dọn dẹp

UNIT 4: VOLUNTEER WORK

	VOCABULARY & WORDFORM	
1	the aged (n)	người già
2	assistance (n)	sự giúp đỡ
3	be fined (v)	bị phạt
4	behave (v)	cư xử
5	charity (n)	tổ chức từ thiện

6	co-operate (v)	hợp tác
7	co-ordinate (v)	phối hợp
8	disadvantaged (adj)	bất hạnh
9	donate (v)	tặng
10	donation (n)	khoản tặng/đóng góp
11	gratitude (n)	lòng biết ơn
12	handicapped (adj)	tật nguyền
13	lawn (n)	bãi cỏ
14	remote (adj)	xa xôi
15	mountainous (adj)	núi
16	mow (v) -> mow the lawn	cắt -> cắt cỏ
17	natural disaster (n)	thiên tai
18	orphan (n)	trẻ mồ côi
19	orphanage (n)	trại mồ côi
20	overcome (v)	vượt qua
21	suffer (v)	chịu đựng, đau khổ
22	voluntarily (adv)	một cách tình nguyện
23	voluntary (adj)	tình nguyện
24	volunteer (n; v)	tình nguyện viên; hoạt động tình nguyện
	PHRASES	
25	take care of	chăm sóc
26	clean up	dọn dẹp
27	do the shopping	đi mua sắm
28	participate in (v)	tham gia
29	take part in (v)	tham gia
30	provide s.th for s.o	cung cấp <u>cái gì</u> cho <u>ai</u>

UNIT 6: COMPETITIONS

	VOCABULARY & WORDFORM	
1	admit (v)	thừa nhận, thú nhận
2	announce (v)	công bố
3	annual (adj)	hàng năm
4	athletic (adj)	(thuộc) điền kinh
5	champion (n)	nhà vô địch
6	compete (v)	thi đấu
7	competition (n)	cuộc thi đấu
8	creative (adj)	sáng tạo
9	feel like (v)	muốn
10	find out (v)	tìm ra

11	insist (on) (v)	khăng khăng đòi
12	judge (n)	giám khảo
13	observe (v)	quan sát
14	participant (n)	người tham gia
15	poem (n)	bài thơ, thơ ca
16	recite (v)	ngâm, đọc (thơ)
17	representative (n)	đại diện
18	smoothly (adv)	suông sẻ
19	sponsor (v)	tài trợ
20	stimulate (v)	khuyến khích
21	performance (n)	sự biểu diễn
22	disappointed (adj)	thất vọng
23	enjoyment (n)	sự vui vẻ, sự tận hưởng
	PHRASES	
24	have difficulty + V_ing	khó khăn trong việc ...
25	accuse ... of (v)	buộc tội
26	apologize ... for (v)	xin lỗi
27	congratulate ... on (v)	chúc mừng
28	prevent ... from (v)	ngăn ngừa, cản
29	thank ... for (v)	cảm ơn
30	warn ... against (v)	cảnh báo
31	dream of ... (v)	mơ ước về

UNIT 7: WORLD POPULATION

	VOCABULARY & WORDFORM	
1	awareness (n)	ý thức
2	birth-control method (n)	phương pháp kiểm soát việc sinh con
3	carry out (v)	tiến hành
4	claim (n; v)	(sự) đòi hỏi
5	explosion (n)	sự bùng nổ
6	growth (n)	tăng trưởng
7	improvement (n)	sự cải thiện
8	injury (n)	chấn thương
9	insurance (n)	sự bảo hiểm
10	journalism (n)	báo chí
11	limit (n; v)	giới hạn; hạn chế
12	be limited (adj)	có giới hạn
13	living standard (n)	mức sống

14	punishment (n)	phạt
15	resource (n)	tài nguyên
16	research (n; v)	nghiên cứu

UNIT 8: CELEBRATIONS

	VOCABULARY & WORDFORM	
1	apricot blossom (n)	hoa mai
2	depend (on) (v)	tùy vào
3	do a clean up (exp)	dọn dẹp sạch sẽ
4	kumquat tree (n)	cây quất vàng
5	longevity (n)	trường thọ
6	lucky money (n)	tiền lì xì
7	Mid-Autumn Festival (n)	tết trung thu
8	pagoda (n)	ngôi chùa
9	peach blossom (n)	hoa đào
10	pray (for) (v)	cầu nguyện
11	sticky rice (n)	nếp
12	Thanksgiving (n)	lễ tạ ơn
13	Valentine's Day (n)	lễ tình nhân
14	celebrate (v)	tổ chức (mừng dịp gì đó)
15	celebration (n)	sự tổ chức (mừng dịp gì đó)
	PHRASES	
16	be decorated with	được trang trí với ...
17	be full of	
18	be polite to	lễ phép với ...
19	be made from	được làm từ ...

UNIT 9: THE POST OFFICE

	VOCABULARY & WORDFORM	
1	advanced (adj)	tiên tiến
2	equip (v)	trang bị
3	Express Mail Service (EMS)	dịch vụ chuyển phát nhanh
4	facsimile (n)	bản sao, máy fax
5	Messenger Call Service (n)	dịch vụ điện thoại
6	parcel (n)	bưu kiện
7	recipient (n)	người nhận
8	secure (adj)	an toàn, bảo đảm
9	service (n)	dịch vụ

10	spacious (adj)	rộng rãi
11	staff (n)	đội ngũ
12	subscribe (v)	đăng ký, đặt mua
13	technology (n)	công nghệ
14	thoughtful (adj)	sâu sắc
15	transfer (n;v)	chuyển
16	transmit (v)	gửi, phát, truyền
17	well-trained (adj)	lành nghề
18	customer (n)	khách hàng
19	capacity (n)	công suất
20	subscriber (n)	thuê bao
21	attitude (n)	thái độ
22	price (n)	giá cả
23	punctuality (n)	tính đúng giờ
24	quality (n)	chất lượng
25	reasonable (a)	hợp lý
26	security (n)	an ninh
	PHRASES	
27	be courteous to (adj)	lịch sự
28	be equipped with	được trang bị
29	send to	gửi

UNIT 10: NATURE IN DANGER

	VOCABULARY & WORDFORM	
1	affect (v)	ảnh hưởng
2	co-exist (v)	sống chung, cùng tồn tại
3	consequence (n)	hậu quả
4	destruction (n)	sự phá hủy
5	disappear (v)	biến mất
6	endangered (adj)	bị nguy hiểm
7	exist (v)	tồn tại
8	interference (n)	sự can thiệp
9	offspring (n)	con cháu, dòng dõi
10	pollutant to	chất gây ô nhiễm
11	prohibit (v) = ban, forbid	cấm
12	rare (adj)	hiếm
13	endangered species	giống, loài có nguy cơ tuyệt chủng
14	fertilizer (n)	phân bón

15	pesticide (n)	thuốc trừ sâu
16	be threatened (v)	đe dọa
17	maintenance (n)	sự giữ gìn
18	preserve (v)	duy trì bảo tồn
19	tropical (adj)	nhiệt đới
20	concern (v)	quan tâm, bận tâm
	PHRASES	
22	be in danger of extinction (exp)	có nguy cơ tuyệt chủng
23	be responsible for (adj)	có trách nhiệm
24	result in (v)	gây ra
25	protect ... from ... (v)	bảo vệ
26	blame for (v)	đổ lỗi
27	be familiar with (adj)	quen
28	become extinct (adj)	tuyệt chủng
29	be grateful to (adj)	biết ơn (ai ...)
30	give up (v)	đầu hàng

UNIT 11: SOURCES OF ENERGY

	VOCABULARY & WORDFORM	
1	alternative (adj)	thay thế
2	at the same time (exp)	cùng lúc đó
3	electricity (n)	điện
4	source of energy	Nguồn năng lượng
5	fossil fuel (n)	nhiên liệu hóa thạch
6	geothermal heat (n)	địa nhiệt
7	nuclear energy (adj)	năng lượng hạt nhân
8	plentiful (adj)	nhiều
9	pollution (n)	sự ô nhiễm
10	release (v)	phóng ra
11	reserve (n)	trữ lượng
12	solar energy (n)	năng ượng mặt trời
13	windmill (n)	cối xay gió
14	convenient (adj)	tiện lợi
15	enormous (adj)	to lớn, khổng lồ
16	Infinite (adj)	vô hạn
17	potential (adj)	tiềm năng
18	hydroelectricity (n)	thủy điện
19	renewable (adj)	có thể thay thế

20	run out (v)	cạn kiệt
21	ecology (n)	sinh thái học
22	fertilize (v)	bón phân
23	replace (v)	thay thế
24	consumption (n)	sự tiêu thụ
25	cause (n)	gây ra
26	conduct (v)	tiến hành
27	research (v)	nghiên cứu
28	surround (v)	bao quanh
	PHRASES	
29	be exhausted with	kiệt sức
30	come from	đến từ
31	be available for (adj)	sẵn có
32	make up (v)	chiếm (số lượng)
33	be harmful to (adj)	có hại (cho ai...)
34	make use of (exp)	tận dụng

UNIT 12: THE ASIAN GAMES

	VOCABULARY & WORDFORM	
1	athletics (n) -> athlete (n)	điền kinh -> vận động viên điền kinh
2	bodybuilding (n)	thể dục thể hình
3	cycling (n)	đua xe đạp
4	decade (n)	thập kỷ (10 năm)
5	enthusiasm (n)	sự hăng hái, nhiệt tình
6	facility (n)	tiện nghi
7	host country (n)	nước chủ nhà; đội nhà
8	visiting country (n)	nước tham gia; đội khách
9	intercultural knowledge (n)	kiến thức liên văn hóa
10	medal (n)	huy chương
11	mountain biking (n)	đua xe đạp địa hình
12	purpose (n)	mục đích
13	quality (n)	chất lượng
14	rugby (n)	bóng bầu dục
15	solidarity (n)	tình đoàn kết
16	strength (n)	sức mạnh
17	weightlifting (n)	cử tạ
18	wrestling (n)	đấu vật
19	silver (n)	bạc

20	bar (n)	thanh, xà
21	gymnast (n)	vận động viên thể dục
22	gymnastics (n)	môn thể dục dụng cụ
23	record (n)	kỷ lục
24	equip (v)	trang bị
25	hold (v)	tổ chức
	PHRASES	
26	apply for (a job) (v)	xin việc
27	take part in	tham gia
28	take place	diễn ra

UNIT 13: HOBBIES

	VOCABULARY & WORDFORM	
1	accompany (v)	đệm đàn, đệm nhạc
2	accomplished (adj)	có tài, cừ khôi
3	admire (v)	ngưỡng mộ
4	avid (adj)	khao khát, thèm thuồng
5	common (n)	chung
6	discard (v)	vứt bỏ
7	envelope (n)	bao thư
8	occupied (adj)	bận rộn
9	practise (v)	thực hành
10	tune (n)	giai điệu
11	category (n)	loại, hạng, nhóm
12	classify (v)	phân loại
13	exchange (v)	trao đổi
14	politician (n)	chính trị gia
15	continually (adv)	liên tục
16	otherwise (conj)	nếu không thì
17	imaginary (adj)	tưởng tượng
	PHRASES	
18	talk about s.th	bàn tán về ...
19	be able to + V ₀	có thể, có khả năng
20	cope with (v)	đối phó, đương đầu
21	collect s.th from	lấy
22	be frightened with	gây khiếp sợ
23	get s.th from	lấy

24	give away	cho đi, tặng
25	throw ... away (v)	ném đi
26	indulge in (v)	say mê

UNIT 14: RECREATION

1. Both + N1 and N2 + V

2. Not only ... but also ...

3. Neither ... nor ...

4. Either ... or ...

UNIT 15: SPACE CONQUEST

	VOCABULARY & WORDFORM	
1	astronaut (n)	phi hành gia
2	cosmonaut (n)	nhà du hành vũ trụ (Nga)
3	gravity (n)	trọng lực
4	honour (v)	tôn kính
5	space (n)	vũ trụ
6	spacecraft (n)	tàu vũ trụ
7	experiment (n)	cuộc thí nghiệm
8	mission (n)	sứ mệnh, nhiệm vụ
9	mankind (n)	nhân loại
10	uncertainty (n)	sự không chắc chắn
11	weightlessness(n)	tình trạng không trọng lượng
12	artificial (adj) = man-made	nhân tạo
13	launch (v)	phóng (tàu vũ trụ)
14	satellite (n)	vệ tinh
15	achievement (n)	thành tựu
16	tragic (adj)	bi thảm, bi kịch
	PHRASES	
17	set foot on (exp)	đặt chân lên
18	mark a milestone (exp)	tạo bước ngoặt
19	try on (v)	thử (quần áo)
20	be named after (v)	được đặt tên theo
21	be in orbit	ở trong quỹ đạo
22	lift off (v)	(tàu vũ trụ) phóng lên
23	carry out (v)	tiến hành
24	at a speed of s.th	đạt tốc độ của ...
25	deal with = handle	giải quyết, xử lý

26	share with	chia sẻ với ...

UNIT 16: THE WONDERS OF THE WORLD

	VOCABULARY & WORDFORM	
1	burial (n)	sự mai táng
2	chamber (n)	buồng, phòng
3	construction (n)	công trình;
4	entrance (n)	lối vào
5	journey (n)	cuộc hành trình
6	mysterious (adj)	huyền bí, bí ẩn
7	pyramid (n)	kim tự tháp
8	ramp (n)	đường dốc
9	rank (v)	xếp hạng
10	spiral (adj)	hình xoắn ốc
11	tomb (n)	mộ, mồ, mả
12	treasure (n)	kho báu
13	wonder (n)	kỳ quan
14	giant (adj) = huge	khổng lồ
15	statue (n)	tượng
16	homeless (adj)	vô gia cư
17	strike (n)	cuộc đình công
18	suppose (v)	cho là
19	ancient (adj)	cổ, thời xưa
20	dynasty (n)	triều đại
21	feature (n)	đặc điểm
22	height (n)	độ cao
23	length (n)	chiều dài
24	magnificence (n)	vẻ tráng lệ, lộng lẫy
25	significance (n)	sự quan trọng
26	architecture (n)	kiến trúc
27	dedicate (v)	dành cho (để tưởng nhớ)
	PHRASES	
28	consist of (v)	bao gồm
29	in honour of	để tưởng nhớ (tỏ lòng tôn kính)
30	be surpassed in	vượt trội

(n) – noun

- (v) – verb
(adj) – adjective
(conj) – conjunction

WORD FORM

UNIT 1: FRIENDSHIP

1. is a two-sided affair. (friend)
2. The first quality of true friendship is (selfish)
3. Some people take up an interest with but they are soon tired it. (enthusiastic)
4.people are capable of a lifelong friendship. (constancy)
5. Good friends must be(loyalty)
6. Anis a person one simply knows. (acquaint)
7. Good friendship should be based on understanding (mutually)
8. Friends must know each other so well that there can be no between them. (suspicious)
9. Why are..... and uncertain people incapable of true friendship? (change)
10. A is a person with whom one has a deeper relationship. (friendly)

UNIT 2: PERSONAL EXPERIENCES

11. There was a look on his face. (sneakily)
12. My mostexperience happened a few years ago when I was a student. (embarrass)
13. I was extremelyand decided to go to the shop at once. (excitement)
14. Could you tell our audience about the mostexperience in your life? (memorably)
15. I was busyhow I would look in thecotton hat. (imagine/floppily)
16. The fire taught Cristina toher family more than things. (appreciation)
17. experiences are unforgettable ones. (person)
18. The girl..... put her hand into the boy's bag to take his notes. (careful)
19. Don't make a(fussy)
20. The boy at me and turned away. (glance)

UNIT 3: A PARTY

21. In the United States, people of all ages birthdays. (celebration)
22. People call the 50th wedding anniversary the anniversary (gold)
23. There will be lots of and some special foods at the New Year's Eve party. (refresh)
24. The birthday cake was beautifully with pink and white icing. (decoration)
25. We all..... our hand hands eagerly and sang "Happy birthday" as she blew out the candles. (clap)
26. I was by my neighbours to attend their son's birthday party last Saturday evening. (invitation)
27. On what are parties held? (occasional)
28. To organize the best party, we should decide on the following: budget, date and time, place,, food and drink. (entertainment)
29. Thebirthday cake was made by Mai's mother. (deliciously)
30. Mai didn't like having the party at a restaurant because it isand expensive. (noise)

UNIT 4: VOLUNTEER WORK

31. Some high school students take part in helping or children. (advantage/handicap)
32. Organization for Educational Developmentwith Spring School to set up English classes in 1938. (co-operation)
33. She was not fired. She left the company(voluntary)
34. Last month the company volunteered to fifty trucks to help the flooded areas. (donation)
35. During summer vacations, I volunteer to work in or..... areas. (remotely/ mountain)
36. Many students often spend many hours as volunteers in hospitals,or homes for the aged. (orphan)
37. She needs someto clean up the kitchen. (voluntary)
38. Big Brothers is an for boys who no longer have fathers. (organize)
39. The students give care andto the children and help them to overcome their difficulties. (comfortable)
40. When she retired, she did a lot of service for the Red Cross. (volunteer)

UNIT 5: ILLITERACY

41. What did the students do to help eradicate? (literacy)
42. They..... spent their summer vacations teaching illiterate people to read and write. (voluntary)
43. The Vietnam Society of Learning decided to expand its activities to the central mountainous provinces. (promote)
44. This was an way to help these people to read and write. (effectively)
45. The passage is about the program of “..... of Primary Education” in Vietnam. (universalize)
46. Taking part in the fight against illiteracy is an job. (honor)
47. Are there any people in your neighborhood? (illiteracy)
48. Some students prepared materials for their classes. (relevance)
49. By July 2000, sixty-one provinces and cities throughout Vietnam had completed the programmes of “Illiteracy.....” (eradicate)
50. At present, the number of illiterate people in the areas is decreasing. (gradual)

UNIT 6: COMPETITIONS

51. At first, things went They almostthe five activities. (smooth/completion)
52. In activity 5, Hung had difficulty the poem. (recite)
53. Women were..... allowed to participate in the Boston races. (official)
54. At the end, the judges will the total score of each group. (announcement)
55. The of three classes took part in the annual final English competition. (represent)
56. The most important thing was our participation in the competition and the (enjoyable)
57. To.....in the contest, you have to work in groups of three. (participant)
58. Mary felt a bit after the competition. (disappoint)
59. Thewas sponsored by the students’ parents Society. (compete)

60. The aim of the contest was to the spirit of learning English among students.
(stimulation)

UNIT 7: WORLD POPULATION

61. People are not aware of the problem of (overpopulated)
62.birth-control methods for family.....aren't available to the Third World women. (safety/plan)
63. We must limit populationbecause our resources are(grow/limit)
64. The explosion of population has caused of foods, lack of hospitals and schools, and low living standards. (short/illiterate)
65. The population of has been faster and faster. (increase)
66. Only 20 percent of the earth land can be used foranimals. (raise)
67. We should carry out population programmes. (educational)
68. It's time governments and international did something to solve the problems of overpopulation. (organize)
69. Scientists say that the main reason for population of the world by about 76 million a year. (explode)
70. According to experts, the population of the world by about 76 million a year. (increasing)

UNIT 8: CELEBRATIONS

71. Children receive their “..... money “inside red envelopes (luck)
72. many people go to the pagoda tofor a happy year for themselves and their family. (prayer)
73. people believe that what do on the first day of the year will their luck during the whole year. (influential)
74. Mut is fruit. (candy)
75. Streets arewith coloured lights and red banners on the days of Tet. (decoration)
76. Tet is theand most important occasion in the year. (grand)
77. People are busygifts, cleaning and decorating their houses and cooking foods. (buy/tradition)
78. Peach is traditional at Tet in the North. (blossomy)
79. Tet's preparation and used to be spread over months. (celebrate)
80. Banh Chung is made from rice, green beans, and pork. (stickiness/fat)

UNIT 9: THE POST OFFICE

81. Vietnam ranks 2nd for growth in the number of telephone (subscribe)
82. Thisand service for transferring money can be useful (speed/security)
83. Thanh Ba post office is with advanced technology and has a and pleasant front office. (equip/space)
84. Theof delivery of letters and newspaper makes me (punctual/satisfy)
85. Press provided by Thanh Ba post office is the most important. (distribute)
86. The well-trained-staff of this post office are always and to customers. (thought/courteously)
87. How many..... post offices are there in Vietnam? (locally)
88. Give your address and ask when the will take place. (install)

89. Fax..... has become a cheap and way to transmit texts and graphics over distance. (transmit/convenience)
90. Letters from viewers express their with current programmes. (satisfy)

UNIT 10: NATURE IN DANGER

91. The giant panda is an (danger)
92. There should be a against the sale of firearms everywhere. (prohibit)
93. A number of rare animals are in danger of becoming.....(extinction)
94. Peaceful is the best solution for all of us now. (co-exist)
95. Human beings are destroying the air by adding to it (pollute)
96. Many areas in the rain forests of Africa has been destroyed, threatening the of some species. (survive)
97. Nature is threatened because of using and pesticides for (fertile/cultivate)
98. The..... of the environment should be prohibited. (destroy)
99. Everything we are doing is for the of good relations between our countries. (maintain)
100. The storm has made a complete to the town. (devastate).

UNIT 11: SOURCES OF ENERGY

101.damage threatens the whole of civilization. (environment)
102. Solar energy is not only and but also clean and safe. (plenty/infinity)
103. Our source of energy will soon be if we don't save them. (exhaust)
104. If you believe the environment should be protected, you may become an (ecology)
105. Although there are some the potential of alternative sources of energy is great. (disadvantageous)
106. Most of our major energy such as oil, coal, etc. come from resources. (renew)
107. Doctor says children need to increase their fruit and vegetables..... (consume)
108. The air is heavily with traffic fumes. (pollute)
109. Water power is but it needs a dam to use this energy. (limit)
110. Solar energy can produce enough..... to heat or cool an entire house. (powerful)

UNIT 12: THE ASIAN GAMES

111. More women are participating in nowadays. (athlete)
112. The Vietnamese took part in the 14th Asian Games with great (participate/enthusiastic)
113. Lily got an average of 9.5 points in herevent. (gymnast)
114. The Asian Games are held for the purpose of developingknowledge and friendship within Asia. (culture)
115. The quality of athletes,and sports facilities has also been developing through time. (officially)
116. Their efforts were muchwhen they won 2 gold medals in (appreciation/body)
117. Vietnam will receive more medals in aof sports events. (various)
118. In this multi-sport event, young people from all over Asia gather together to(competition)
119. New sports and sports have been and added to the Games. (tradition/introduction)

120. During their five decades, the Asian Games have been.....in all aspects.
(historical/advance)

UNIT 13: HOBBIES

121. He is very good at people singing with his guitar. (accompany)
122. They got fed up with having to read fairy tales and other stories to me.....(continual)
123. Reading enable me to learn a lot of things. (fascinate)
124. Her stamp is the most attractive I' ve ever seen. (collect)
125. Her uncle is anguitarist. (accomplishment)
126. Hobbies really keep meand I'm glad I am able to do them. (occupy)
127. At last, our project was successful. (gigantic)
128. There are other hobbies that I in for a while. (indulgent)
129. Tom just collects the stamps fromenvelopes. (discard)
130. We are in complete of your accident. (ignorantly)

UNIT 14: RECREATION

131. Medical techniques are becoming more all the time. (sophisticate)
132. It has been a successful year. (spectacular)
133. The Antarctic is the world's last great (wild)
134. He was attractive and intelligent. (average)
135. Mortar is the substance used in to bind the bricks together. (brick)
136. Courses like shoemaking or glass provide people with practical skills.
(engrave)
137. Entry.....to weekend course are generous. (quality)
138. There has been anin relations between the two countries. (improve)
139. Small businesses are risky (undertake)
140. He leads a life (solitude)

UNIT 15: SPACE CONQUEST

141. The first..... satellite Sputnik was launched on October 4 in 1957. (artificially)
142. How would the mind deal with thetension? (psychology)
143. Gagarin could have made another space flight if aaccident had not occurred. (tragedy)
144. How would the body react to the changes in temperature? (extremely)
145. In 1961, the US President Kennedy..... the nation to put a man on the moon before
the end of the decade. (challenging)
146. An American flag was left on the moon's surface as a of the achievement.
(remind)
147. The 27- year-old Soviet cosmonaut became the first person to eat and drink in
.....(weightless)
148. The people of the US share with the people of the Soviet Union their for the
safe flight. (satisfy)
149. No one knew what would happen to a human being in space. (precise)
150. Before Gagarin's historic flight there were still enormous (uncertain)

UNIT 16: THE WONDERS OF THE WORLD

151. Can you name the of the world? (wonderful)

152. The purpose of this pyramid was to protect the chamber from the weather and from thieves. (bury)
153. What was the purpose of this stone pyramids? (hugeness)
154. Thieves might try to steal theandin the Great Pyramids of Giza. (treasurer/ belong)
155. The Great Pyramid of Giza was only in height in the nineteenth century AD. (surpass)
156. The Great Pyramid of Giza ranked as the tallest on earth for more than 43 centuries. (structural)
157. How.....and large was the Great Pyramid of Giza? (highly)
158. The Ponagar Cham Towers consist of 4 towers. Each tower wasto different god. (dedication)
159. Also in the area is the museum housing the Sun Boat. (mystery)
160. Though it isn't known how the blocks were put in place, several have been proposed. (theoretical)

MORE EXERCISES ON WORD FORMS

➤Supply the correct word form:

1. He is a supporter. (constancy)
2. He's always provoking me. (constancy)
3. It was very of him to offer us his room. (selfish)
4. Everybody likes her because of her (selfish)
5. Nobody likes a person. (change)
6. The videotapes were recorded by the FBI. (secret)
7. Can you promise to keep a? (secret)
8. People are often of strangers. (suspicion)
9. Sarah looked up at me (suspicion)
10. Jill was a listener. (sympathize)
11. We all have great for the victims of the flood. (sympathize)
12. We deeply with the families of the victims. (sympathize)
13. He's had a few problems recently. (person)
14. He has a very outgoing and makes friends very easily. (person)
15. He is a modest and man. (sincerity)
16. I am very proud of this scheme and I hope it will succeed. (sincerity)
17. At 16, Hoskins is already an sailor. (experience)
18. Workers who handle asbestos need to wear clothing. (Protect)
19. Are we all fully with the details of the case? (acquaintance)
20. Are you in playing tennis tomorrow? (interest)
- 21/ I admire him for his intelligence, cheerful disposition, and(honest)
- 22/ Children are usually interested in but a little by snakes. (frighten)
- 23/ He responded to my question (polite)
- 24/ It is hard to deny that diminishes the quality of our lives. (pollute)
- 25/ I don't want to risk Mary. (upset)
- 26/ The giant panda is an species. (danger)
- 27/ I am tired of hearing her (complain)
- 28/ My brother is studying science. (society)
- 29/ We often meet each other after work. (society)
- 30/ Why did Tom keep jokes about me? I don't enjoy at. (make / laugh)

- 31/ Databases are generally by copyright. (protect)
32/ He's very towards his sister. (protect)
33/ A healthy diet should provide against disease. (protect)
34/ Nobody likes him because he is a spoiled child. (selfishness)
35/ It wasn't really a riot; it was an protest. (organize)
36/ They are members of a voluntary (organize)
37/ The merchant looked, but she wasn't. I discovered when I got home that she had cheated me. (honesty)
38/ The garden became for its exotic plants. (celebrate)
39/ The ceremony will be a of his life. (celebrate)
40/ Two men were seen nearby acting (suspicious)
41/ He was so that he tried to kill himself by taking poison. (disappoint)
42/ Boys and girls may behave in this situation. (differ)
43/ After of his medical training, Stein went to work in Africa. (complete)
44/ Please put your sheet in the box provided. (complete)
45/ Doctors said the operation was successful. (complete)
46/ The for jobs is fiercer than ever. (compete)
47/ Over 30. 000 will run in the New York marathon. (compete)
48/ Many films are struggling to survive in a highly marketplace. (compete)
49/ Many students in this college to work in remote areas every summer. (volunteer)
50/ Please call now if you are interested in a child. (sponsor)
51/ I the money prize to charity. (donate)
52/ All the teachers work on an entirely basis. (volunteer)
53/ Only 20 per cent of women in the country are (literacy)
54/ I'll never forget the look of on her. (disappoint)
55/ It was to see the team beaten by weaker opposition. (disappoint)
56/ Countries are with each other to build the tallest building in the world. (compete)
57/ She does social work. (voluntare)
58/ His daughter to join the army. (volunteer)
59/ Carbon dioxide occurs in the air in a form. (nature)
60/ The weather was excellent and we had an extremely holiday. (enjoy)
61/ Many people still refuse to believe that smoking is (harm)
62/ He likes reading novels. (history)
63/ The orchestra is very important for the life of the city. (culture)
64/ Thank you for a very evening. We had a lovely time. (enjoy)
65/ These new shoes are not very (comfort)
66/ We have to conserve the natural resources of our country. Water is necessary for hydropower station. (conserve)
67/ Some plants have to be well-protected. The tender plants need against the cold weather. (protect)
68/ She dealt with the situation (effect)
69/ The *Kien Thuc Ngay Nay* is read by both teenagers and adults. (wide)
70/ Many of the in the race did not expect to win. (participate)
71/ The Island has very few resources. (nature)
72/ Burning garbage will give off odour. (pleasant)

- 73/ These chemicals are They can cause death or illness if taken into the body.
(poison)
- 74/ If you are when you write your composition, you will probably get a good
grade. (care)
- 75/ There have been many wonderful in this century. (develop)
- 76/ English has become an means of communication. (effect)
- 77/ Your new dress makes you more (beauty)
- 78/ The children can play here. It's not (danger)
- 79/ Paris is the most city of France. (importance)
- 80/ for Linda, her results were not good enough. (fortunate)
- 81/ Tom has a large of foreign coins. (collect)
- 82/ Hobbies keep me and I'm glad I'm able to do them. (occupy)
- 83/ stamps broadens my understanding about the world. (collect)
- 84/ My father is an guitarist. (accomplish)
- 85/ The Vietnamese took part in the 14th Asian Games with great
enthusiasm. (participate)
- 86/ Helen joined the army as an, and is now a captain. (office)
- 87/ If you don't speak the language you feel more like a (foreign)
- 88/ After running for fifteen kilometers, John felt completely (exhaust)
- 89/ After the crash, Carla was the only (survive)
- 90/ It's best to rent a car with mileage. (limit)
- 91/ His car was smashed but he wasn't killed. (fortunate)
- 92/ It's that you were ill on the day of the pop festival. (fortunate)
- 93/ After eight days in an open boat with no food, his was a miracle. (survive)
- 94/ The government sent help to the of the earthquake. (survive)
- 95/ Most of the land in this region hasn't been used for a long time. (agriculture)
- 96/ The Tate Gallery has a fine of modern pictures. (collect)
- 97/ When Charles won the prize, his friends were filled with (admire)
- 98/ The teacher is pleased with the in my work. (improve)
- 99/ Oil is of great to industry. (important)
- 100/ Smoking is near the petrol tanks. (prohibit)
- 101/ Our local lake has been by nearby factories. (pollute)
- 102/ Nitrogen oxides and carbon monoxide are the two in the air. (pollute)
- 103/ air is particularly bad for people with respiratory problems. (pollute)
- 104/ What's your father's? (occupy)
- 105/ Advertising is often the most effective method of (promote)
- 106/ My uncle always has ideas. (advance)
- 107/ The singer was on the piano by her sister. (accompany)
- 108/ Arranging the peace talks was a remarkable (accomplish)
- 109/ I admire my aunt. She is an dancer. (accomplish)
- 110/ When you travel into space, you can eat and drink in (weigh)
- 111/ It is one of the most important events in the 20th century. (history)
- 112/ She got great from helping people learn. (satisfy)
- 113/ There are still enormous about life in space. (certain)
- 114/ The flight of Shenzhou 5 marked a milestone in China's space project. (succeed)
- 115/ How would the mind deal with the tension? (psychology)
- 116/ I'm sure we will win because we have some advantages over our (compete)
- 117/ I wish I could travel around the world to see all of the world. (wonder)

- 118/ She complains about her house work. (continue)
119/ His about Vietnamese culture made me surprised. (know)
120/ She the word very slowly and precisely. (pronunciation)
121/ All between New York and Washington have been cancelled due to fog. (fly)
122/ I think his illness is morethan physical. (psychology)
123/ I made an appointment with the school (psychology)
124/ Astronauts work in conditions. (weight)
125/ You should never make your students feel (ignorance)

PREPOSITIONS

- 1/ I've got a meeting Thursday afternoon.
2/ People are not aware the problem of overpopulation.
3/ Sarah apologized being rude to me.
4/ I'm busy the morning but I can see you lunch time.
5/ We'll visit you the spring.
6/ Thousands of people are suffering malnutrition in the Third world.
7/ I had a glance the article, but I haven't read it yet.
8/ You're not taking good care yourself.
9/ A locked gate prevented us entering the park.
10/ Doctors have been trying to stop people drinking.
11/ Why do you keep looking at me like this?
12/ They give care and comfort disadvantaged children.
13/ A body builder is capable lifting heavy weights.
14/ In Christian countries, most people don't work Christmas.
15/ Thank you sending me the photos of John.
16/ Are you doing anything Saturday evening?
17/ I'm starting my new job 3 July.
18/ Were women officially allowed to participate the Boston races in 1957?
19/ The children are very fond swimming.
20/ I am sorry being late Monday.
21/ He asked his father money.
22/ I object being kept waiting. Why can't you be time?
23/ I've been searching my keys.
24/ I am very grateful my friend his help.
25/ Sun oil can protect the skin the sun.
26/ Congratulations winning the competition!
27/ When the candles were blown the room was in dark.
28/ I often take part social activities every weekend
29/ Peter should have apologised being late this morning, but he did not
30/ You can believe him. I do not think he is capable telling lies.
31/ What's the largest city the world?
32/ How many pages are there this book?
33/ I met Ann the way to work.
34/ Would you look the baby while I go shopping?
35/ We arrived the airport just in time for the flight.
36/ I'm very interested modern art.
37/ David is ill. He is hospital.
38/ I don't work Sundays.
39/ I like listening music when I have free time.
40/ Look me while I'm talking you.
41/ I've looked my keys every where but I can't find them.
42/ Colin has worked a bank since May.

- 43/ I'm busy the morning but I can see you lunch time.
44/ The garden is lovely spring.
45/ I feel much better the beginning of the day.
46/ I'm afraid I'm very bad writing letters.
47/ We're fed up working so hard.
48/ Are you any good organising things?
49/ Hurry up! The train leaves five minutes.
50/ Can you switch the TV? I am studying for my exam.
51/ Let's get some petrol. We don't want to break
52/ Let's go a walk.
53/ Can you tell the difference plastic and leather?
54/ A: Is Mary at home now?
 B: No, she iswork.
55/ Where will you be Christmas?
56/ I am going to the church Christmas Day.
57/ He often stays at home Saturday nights.
58/ This street is very dangerous night.
59/ Are you busy the moment?
60/ I am going on holiday the end of October.
61/ Where were you 28 February.
62/ We lived in Paris 1982 until 1990.
63/ Don't sit the grass. It's wet.
64/ I had a swim the river yesterday morning.
65/ There is somebody the bus stop.
66/ Mark works a factory London.
67/ The clock is the wall.
68/ Milan is the north of Italy.
69/ I read about the accidentthe newspaper.
70/ Harry is afraid snakes.
71/ The class consists ten boys and twelve girls.
72/ The driver is responsible the lives of the people on the train.
73/ Why don't you pay attention what the teacher says?
74/ Listening music is more interesting than watching TV.
75/ When his father died, he was occupied the business.
76/ This shop sells a wide range bicycles.
77/ They revealed that he had supplied the terrorist organizations weapons.
78/ He classifies the books many categories.
79/ I hope you have made good use your time.
80/ I feel very tired. times, I consider giving work.
81/ I am not used getting up so early the morning.
82/ Peter doesn't object looking after the children.
83/ She lives France.
84/ The train I got on didn't stop the station I wanted to go to.
85/ We arrived England Gatwick Airport.
86/ Apart you, no one else knows that I have escaped.
87/ What do you often do the summer?
88/ John F. Kennedy was killed 22 November 1963.
89/ Your mother's birthday is Monday, isn't it?
90/ I am very busy April.

VOCABULARY + PRONUNCIATION (THE 1st SEMESTER)

TEST 1

1. A date that is an exact number of years after the date of an important event is a(n) _____.
A. birthday B. celebration C. wedding D. anniversary
2. Most of the undeveloped countries need a lot of _____ aid.
A. together B. unselfish C. mutual D. friend
3. I don't like the strange look of that man. There is something _____ about him.
A. embarrassing B. nervous C. sneaky D. serious
4. Most married couples in the United States celebrate their wedding _____ party.
A. ceremony B. anniversary C. celebration D. festival
5. Excuse me! I'm doing my homework. _____ turning down the stereo a little?
A. Would you please B. Would you like C. Would you mind D. Can you
6. Can you tell me one of your most _____ experiences?
A. unforgettable B. memorable C. embarrassing D. All are correct
7. The remote areas need _____ to help teach children how to read and write.
A. volunteer B. voluntary C. voluntarily D. volunteers
8. A. population B. annual C. influence D. mutual
9. A. apartment B. smart C. party D. war
10. A. one B. done C. gone D. once

TEST 2

1. A. celebrate B. relative C. wedding D. decide
2. _____ is a place where children whose parents are died are looked after.
A. gymnasium B. An orphanage C. A gallery D. An aquarium
3. Many students in my country _____ go to remote or mountainous areas to help the people there.
A. volunteer B. volunteerly C. voluntary D. voluntarily
4. The volunteers help disadvantaged or handicapped children to _____ their difficulties.
A. struggle B. overcome C. fight D. receive
5. A home for children whose parents are dead is called a(n) _____.
A. kindergarten B. street people house C. orphanage D. lodging
6. Some high school students **take part in** helping the handicapped.
A. play a role of B. participate in C. take a place of D. are a part of
7. We should **take care of** war invalids and families of martyrs.
A. look after B. look into C. look through D. look over
8. A. two B. twenty C. twin D. twice
9. How many contestants were there **in all**?
A. as a total B. as a result C. as respected D. as usual
10. The judges have to **observe** and score their performance.
A. complete B. compete C. watch D. award

TEST 3

1. In tonight's quiz, our **contestants** have come from all over the country.
A. judges B. competitors C. sponsors D. teachers
2. Mary often found her teacher's remarks **stimulating**.
A. participating B. enjoying C. encouraging D. scoring
3. He has only one **aim** in life, which is to become wealthy.
A. purpose B. contest C. score D. sponsor
4. They have to **complete** five activities in all.

- A. found B. recite C. finish D. say
5. They took part in the **annual** singing contest.
A. once a year B. a year C. usual D. final
6. The contestant have to _____ their speech fluently.
A. represent B. representation C. representative D. represented
7. Its aim was to stimulate the _____ of learning English among students.
A. spirit B. spiritual C. spiritualist D. spiritless
8. A _____ is a person officially deciding who is the winner of a competition.
A. judge B. poet C. participant D. sponsor
9. How many _____ are there in the competition.
A. participates B. participation C. participants D. participated
10. The _____ of each class of my school took part in the competition.
A. represent B. representation C. representatives D. represented

TEST 4

1. There are twenty questions _____ all.
A. of B. with C. in D. for
2. We managed to _____ over \$4,000 through donations and other events.
A. deposit B. donate C. raise D. exchange
3. The _____ will observe and score your performance in the contest.
A. judges B. contestants C. sponsors D. winners
4. A. competition B. completion C. information D. question
5. A. billion B. climbing C. bright D. blouse
6. The United Nations is a (n) _____ organization.
A. international B. internation C. national D. nation
7. A _____ is a competition in which people try to win something.
A. test B. examination C. contest D. survey
8. A _____ is a person who has been chosen to speak or vote on behalf of a group or a person.
A. member B. sponor C. leader D. representative
9. Mut, which is candied fruit such as **sugared** apples, plums, or tomatos, is also popular.
A. sweetened B. sour C. bitter D. peppery
10. The aim is **to make something develop or become more active**.
A. to observe B. to stimulate C. to score D. to recite

TEST 5

2. The runners have to **pass** through 13 towns.
A. go B. help C. join D. clock
3. Women are **officially** allowed to take part in the races in 1967.
A. annually B. formally C. smoothly D. completely
4. Tet's _____ used to be spread over months
A. celebrate B. celebrated C. celebration D. celebrating
5. Before Tet, housewife are always busy cooking _____ food
A. tradition B. traditional C. traditionally D. traditionalist
6. On the first day of the new year, people often try to be nice and _____
A. polite B. impolite C. politely D. impolitely
7. _____ people depend on the lunar calendar to prepare for their crops
A. agricultural B. agriculturally C. agrarian D. agriculture
8. Each nation has its own way of _____ the New Year.
A. eating B. celebrating C. preparing D. cooking

9. During Tet holiday, homes are often _____ with plants and flowers
A. colored B. decorated C. hanged D. supplied
10. In Vietnam, Tet is the grandest and most important _____ in the year
A. occasion B. season C. tradition D. vision

TEST 6

1. The whole family usually tries to **get together** at Christmas.
A. contact B. gather C. relate D. communicate
2. We wish you both- health and **longevity**.
A. long life B. happy life C. easy life D. exciting life
3. People believed that what they do on the first day of the year will _____ their luck during the whole year.
A. control B. influence C. exchange D. result
4. **Agrarian people** depend on the lunar calendar to prepare for their crops.
A. gardeners B. planters C. farmers D. highlanders
5. He _____ his room with pictures of all his favorite sports figures.
A. prepared B. received C. decorated D. colored
6. Many people go to the pagoda to _____ for a happy year for themselves and their family.
A. pray B. long C. desire D. ask
7. Banh Chung and Mut are _____ food on Tet holiday. The majorities of families have them during Tet.
A. exciting B. popular C. ripe D. colored
8. Lunar New Year is the **grandest** and most important occasion in the year.
A. tiny B. small C. great D. unimportant
9. She had never imagined being able to visit such **remote** countries.
A. foreign B. faraway C. friendly D. desolate
10. The lawn needs **mowing** again.
A. repairing B. making C. bending D. cutting

TEST 7

- | | | | |
|----------------|-------------|--------------|---------------|
| 1. A. when | B. who | C. where | D. which |
| 2. A. usually | B. uranium | C. uniform | D. umbrella |
| 3. A. answer | B. world | C. write | D. jeweler |
| 4. A. game | B. organize | C. angry | D. college |
| 5. A. year | B. youth | C. jealous | D. yellow |
| 6. A. ugly | B. unit | C. ulcer | D. upset |
| 7. A. mow | B. lawn | C. forward | D. power |
| 8. A. donation | B. natural | C. situation | D. suggestion |
| 9. A. uniform | B. useful | C. under | D. university |
| 10. A. water | B. whale | C. whole | D. window |

TEST 8

1. A bank has promised a **donation** of \$ 24 million towards the disaster fund.
A. connection B. addition C. contribution D. provision
2. We were **involved** in the anti- drug for campaign up until the last minute.
A. included B. affected C. interested D. taken part
3. People now are **raising** money for flood victims.
A. sending B. collecting C. paying D. making
4. A. limit B. figure C. iron D. billion

5. A. great B. available C. raise D. said
6. A. supported B. used C. reached D. developed
7. A. program B. earth C. birth D. bird
8. A. double B. govern C. punish D. control
10. In 2000, the world population _____ the figure of 6.6 billion.
A. got B. went C. increased D. reached

TEST 9

1. The population of the world has been _____ faster and faster.
A. adding B. reducing C. increasing D. flowing
2. A _____ is a number representing a particular amount, especially one given in official information.
A. image B. digit C. key D. figure
3. The chart _____ the distribution of world population by region.
A. tells B. sees C. shows D. watches
4. It is said that there are _____ on earth to support 8 billion people.
A. resources enough B. enough resources C. plenty resources D. much resources
5. Nigeria has a population _____ nearly 100 million.
A. about B. in C. of D. with
6. The rapid growth of population led to an acute _____ of housing.
A. shortfall B. shortcut C. shortcoming D. shortage
7. The population of the world is growing at a dangerous _____.
A. amount B. rate C. figure D. way
8. Better health care and agriculture have led to rapid population _____.
A. grow B. growing C. grown D. growth
9. Pressure on natural resources will _____ as we face a population explosion.
A. increase B. decrease C. decline D. raise
10. Our school has managed to collect a lot of books to _____ to the children in a village school.
A. publish B. distribute C. employ D. depart

TEST 10

1. A. change B. children C. machine D. church
2. A. guitarist B. passenger C. generous D. village
3. A. other B. long C. possible D. constancy
4. Many of the stories are base _____ rumor.
A. on B. in C. at D. under
5. I can't stand people with no _____ of humor.
A. ability B. sprit C. keenness D. sense.
6. I have nothing in _____ with Tim.
A. together B. common C. commonly D. altogether
7. The children seem to be totally capable _____ working by themselves.
A. on B. of C. in D. for
8. Your friendship should be base on _____ trust.
A. basic B. fragile C. mutual D. blind.
9. Friendship is two-sided _____, it lives by give and take.
A. affair B. event C. aspect D. feature.
10. A(an) _____ is someone you know but he/she is not your close friend.
A. acquaintances B. friend C. neighbor D. classmate

TEST 11

1. If you only care about your interests and feelings, you are very _____.
A. happy B. friendly C. loyal D. selfish
2. You can't always insist on your own way – There has to be some give and _____.
A. do B. make C. take D. to
3. A. hand B. bank C. sand D. band
4. A. money B. month C. monkey D. monitor
5. A. change B. hungry C. stronger D. singer
6. She made a big _____ about not having a window seat on the plane.
A. complaint B. fuss C. excitement D. interest
7. The boy glance at me and turned away.
A. close look B. looked quickly C. direct look D. furtive look
8. I think that pop star is the _____ of countless teenagers.
A. image B. figure C. sample D. idol
9. My most embarrassing _____ happened a few years ago.
A. knowledge B. experience C. understanding D. reality
10. This _____ girl was disliked by the rest of the class.
A. helpful B. sneaky C. unselfish D. generous

TEST 12

1. He pulled a /an _____ of 10 pound notes out of his pocket.
A. sum B. amount C. piece D. wad
2. Something that is _____ makes you feel shy or ashamed.
A. careful B. careless C. sneaky D. embarrassing
3. A fat B. any C. gas D. hat
4. A. glad B. geography C. glass D. give
5. A. hour B. happy C. husband D. hold
6. He got quite a lot of nice presents from his family, and one of them was a beautiful big drum.
A. books B. sweets C. gifts D. things
8. When they finished singing, Lisa _____ the candles on the cake.
A. turned off B. blew out C. cleared up D. brought out
9. A. who B. wheel C. whether D. whale
10. A. summer B. educate C. club D. public

TEST 13

1. A. photograph B. though C. laugh D. enough
2. A. earning B. learning C. searching D. clearing
3. A. candy B. sandy C. many D. handy
4. A. given B. risen C. ridden D. whiten
5. A. probably B. population C. gold D. hospital
6. A. smallest B. best C. longest D. biggest
7. A. mountain B. ground C. blouse D. soup
8. A stage B. page C. cake D. tablet
9. A. elephant B. event C. engineer D. let
10. A. trouble B. flood C. shout D. country

TEST 14

1. A home for children whose parents are dead is called a(n) _____

- A. kindergarten B. orphanage C. street people house D. lodging
2. _____ is one of the most important qualities of the two friends.
A. Loyalty B. Loyallness C. Loyalcy D. Loyal
3. Some young _____ work in the home of sick or old people.
A. volunteer B. voluntary C. volunteered D. volunteers
4. Streets are often decorated _____ colorful lights and red banners during Tet.
A. on B. with C. for D. by
5. A. medium B. lecture C. inventor D. president
6. A. heat B. break C. meaning D. seaside
7. A. figure B. grow C. organize D. average
8. A. cheese B. chemical C. children D. teacher

TEST 15

1. A. helicopter B. hospital C. hour D. husband
2. A. write B. who C. whose D. watch
3. Many people go to pagodas to _____ for good luck.
A. ask B. think C. pray D. celebrate
4. Some scientists say that there are enough resources to _____ 8 billion people.
A. raise B. provide C. distribute D. support
5. A. mine B. limit C. activity D. spirit
6. A. kumquat B. lucky C. stimulate D. plum
7. A. parade B. marathon C. maximum D. annual
8. A. represent B. remote C. dress D. general
9. A number of safe and inexpensive birth control _____ are provided to reduce the overpopulation in many countries.
A. methods B. types C. ways D. sorts
10. At Tet holidays, people in the North of Vietnam often _____ their houses with peach flowers.
A. decorated B. decorate C. decorates D. decorating
11. The most _____ food of Tet is *banh chung* (square sticky rice cake).
A. tradition B. necessary C. importance D. special
12. A. rumour B. influence C. humour D. smooth
13. A. fund B. result C. trust D. annual
14. A. complete B. constancy C. sponsor D. perform
15. A. quick B. recite C. friendship D. spring
16. A. Polite B. gift C. excite D. pine
17. A. sympathy B. quality C. loyalty D. bicycle
18. A. spread B. reach C. peach D. clean
19. A. cheese B. which C. chemistry D. change
20. A. Honest B. hour C. where D. house

VOCABULARY (The 2nd SEMESTER)

1. The _____ of the Asian games comes not only from the symbolic flame, but from the relationships.
A. warmth B. warm C. unity D. spirit
2. She is afraid of traveling by _____. She is _____.
A. plane / spacesick B. air / air-ill C. space / sickair D. airplane / airsick
3. Reading is her _____.
A. hobby B. interest C. pastime D. all are correct
4. The post office offers the _____ Mail Service which is particularly fast.
A. Secure B. Efficient C. Express D. Reliable
5. We are proud of our _____ staff, who are always friendly and efficient.
A. well-done B. well-appointed C. well-behaved D. well-trained
6. The hotel staff are always friendly and courteous.
A. efficient B. polite C. helpful D. perfect
7. There was no mention of the incident in the national press.
A. television B. newspapers C. Internet D. radio
8. I need to _____ £1,000 to my daughter's account.
A. transfer B. transform C. transmit D. transact
9. _____ to the magazine can take advantage of this special offer.
A. Subscribe B. Subscription C. Subscribing D. Subscribers
10. _____ is someone who works from home on computer and communicates with their office by telephone, fax, or e-mail.
A. Telecomputer B. Telecommuter C. Telephonist D. Telemarketer
11. We _____ to several sports channels on television.
A. subscribe B. deliver C. offer D. notify
12. The society was set up to _____ endangered species from extinction.
A. prevent B. distinguish C. preserve D. survive
13. If people stop destroying animal's natural habitat, more species will survive and produce _____.
A. offspring B. ecology C. landscape D. benefit
14. People in this region cultivate mainly rice and vegetables.
A. destroy B. grow C. develop D. support
15. They started a campaign to smoking among teenagers.
A. encourage B. decrease C. discourage D. prohibit
16. Your failure is the consequence of not studying hard enough for the test.
A. cause B. motive C. result D. status
17. Oil, coal and natural gas are _____ fuels made from decayed material from animal or plants.
A. unleaded B. smokeless C. solid D. fossil
18. All fossil fuels are _____ resources that cannot be replaced after use.
A. unlimited B. renewable C. available D. non-renewable
19. Solar energy is not only plentiful and infinite but also clean and safe.
A. boundless B. unlimited C. uncountable D. inflexible
20. There is now increasing concern about the world's energy particularly about those involving fossil fuels.
A. possessions B. goods C. materials D. resources
21. is produced from the heat stored in the earth's core.
A. Geothermal energy B. Nuclear energy
C. Solar energy D. Water energy

22. Scuba-diving and windsurfing are both aquatic sports.
A. field B. water C. combat D. individual
23. There are number of things I like to do in my free time.
A. pleasure B. precious C. busy D. idle
24. Now I can play a few simple tune.
A. compound B. plain C. easy D. complicated
25. I always remove the stamps before discarding the envelopes.
A. dispensing B. disposing C. dumping D. keeping
26. I don't have much money, so I bought the camera _____.
A. newly B. second-hand C. immediately D. profitably
27. In Britain, the most common leisure activities are home-based.
A. regular B. popular C. standard D. distinctive
28. Neil Armstrong, an American _____, was the first man to step on the moon's surface.
A. scientist B. cosmonaut C. astronaut D. astronomer
29. The astronauts were able to send the information back to the earth.
A. spaceships B. space stations C. spacemen D. space shots
30. Without enough oxygen, you may lose your ability to think clearly and may even _____.
A. breath B. explode C. hallucinate D. pollute
31. Mt. Everest is now known as the world's highest _____.
A. environment B. canal C. flock D. junkyard
32. The winners of each event were presented with gold, silver, and bronze _____.
A. flags B. medals C. banners D. sheet
33. He keeps a lot of pictures and paintings. He is an art _____.
A. keeper B. collector C. guitarist D. relative
34. British people are very interested in _____ in sports.
A. entering B. interfering C. involving D. taking part
35. A pharaoh was a _____ of ancient Egypt.
A. king B. queen C. prince D. princess
36. _____ can help the athlete to improve the strength of muscles and the appearance of the body.
a. Shooting b. Table tennis c. Weightlifting d. Playing chess
37. He was late for work this morning because his car had a _____.
a. check-in b. warm-up c. takeoff d. breakdown
38. Is English a compulsory or _____ subject at high schools in your city?
a. necessary b. remedial c. optional d. disposal
39. The _____ ceremony officially starts the Asian Games.
a. opening b. closing c. starting d. open
40. The _____ of humanity that does not have modern energy supplies like electricity.
a. one-three b. one-third c. first-three d. first-third
41. My cousin from Hanoi has just come to HCM city by _____.
a. a space shuttle b. an airbed c. a spacesuit d. airplane
42. Forest fire is the most serious _____.
a. preservation b. importance c. destruction d. improvement
43. A _____ is a person who buys something from the shop.
a. shopbuyer b. shoplifter c. customer d. shopkeeper
44. Space tourists will orbit the Earth by the next generation of space _____.
a. cars b. buses c. trains d. shuttles
45. I like lying in a(n) _____ when going camping.
a. space shuttle b. air bed c. space suit d. airplane
46. I like to study _____ it helps me know a lot about life on earth.

- a. biology b. biodata c. biosphere d. biogas
47. Little girls love collecting _____ on the beach.
a. shells b. coins c. sand d. stamps
48. You need 2 rackets and a shuttlecock to play _____.
a. tennis b. badminton c. basketball d. table tennis
49. We are looking forward to the firework display on New Year's Eve.
a. acting b. show c. skill d. exhibition
50. This is his favorite pair of _____ with which he has watched hundreds of horse races.
a. sunglasses b. glasses c. binoculars d. telescope

READING COMPREHENSION

Exercise 1: Read the following passage and choose the best answer:

One warm spring day, Mrs. Baker went to the park near her house. She sat down on a park bench and started to read a letter from her daughter, Karen. Karen and her husband, John and their two children, Ken and Kathy, were on Florida on vacation for two weeks. Karen said that they were having a wonderful time, and she sent some postcards in the letters. The postcards showed pictures of Florida. Mrs. Baker smiled at she read the letter again. She was happy that they were having a good time. While she was reading, a man came and sat down at the other end of the bench. He opened his newspaper and began to read.

Suddenly the postcards blew out of Mrs. Baker's hand and fell on the ground. They started to blow away. Mr. Mark Baker quickly reached down and helped Mrs. Baker pick them up. Mrs. Baker thanked him and showed him the postcards. They introduced themselves. It was the beginning of a very pleasant friendship.

1. Mrs. Baker was _____.
A. at home reading her letter B. in the park reading her letter
C. in the park reading her newspaper D. in the park reading her book
2. What happened?
A. The letter blew onto the ground. B. The newspaper blew onto the ground.
C. The postcards blew onto the ground. D. Her hat blew onto the ground.
3. What did Mr. Marks do?
A. He continued reading his newspaper
B. He pick them up and looked at them
C. He reached down and helped Mrs. Baker pick up the postcards
D. He got up and went home
4. After Mr. Mark helped Mrs. Baker pick up the postcards _____.
A. they went to the movie.
B. they introduced themselves, and they began to talk.
C. she thanked him and then she went home.
D. he continued reading his newspaper.
5. The story ends with _____.
A. a letter B. a postcard C. a love D. a friendship

Exercise 2: Read the passage , fill in each numbered blank with suitable word or phrase.

To many people, their friends are the most important in their life. Really good friends always (1) _____ joys and sorrows with you and never turn their backs on you. Your best friend may be someone you have known all your life or someone you have grown up with.

There are all sorts of things that can bring about this special (2) _____. It may be the result of enjoying the same activities and sharing experiences. Most of us have met someone (3) _____ we have

immediately felt relaxed with as if we had known (4) _____ for ages. However, it really takes you years to get to know someone well enough to consider your best friend.

To the majority of us, this is someone we (5) _____ completely and who understands us better than anyone else. It's the person you can tell him or her your most intimate secrets.

- | | | | |
|---------------|--------------|-------------|-----------------|
| 1. A. have | B. spend | C. share | D. give |
| 2. A. friends | B. relatives | C. relation | D. relationship |
| 3. A. whose | B. what | C. which | D. that |
| 4. A. they | B. them | C. their | D. theirs |
| 5. A. truth | B. true | C. untrue | D. trust |

Exercise 3: Read the following passage and choose the best answer:

Going to party can be fun and enjoyable. If you are invited to a party, call your host up early to inform him/ her of whether you are going. If you want to bring someone who has not been invited along with you, you should ask for permission first. During the party you may like to help your host by offering to serve drink or wash the dishes. Your host would certainly appreciate these efforts. Your host has many people to attend and can not spend all his/ her time with you. You could try to make people feel more relaxed by introducing yourself to someone who friendly-looking. Before you leave the party, remember to thank your host first. If you have time, you could even offer to help your host clean up place.

1. If you are invited to a party you should.....
A. take someone with you
B. ask for your parents' permission first
C. bring a small gift
D. call to inform your arrival
2. If you want to bring someone, you should.....
A. ask for your parents' permission first
B. ask for your host's permission first
C. bring a small gift
D. give money
3. Does your host spend all time with you?
A. Yes, he does
B. No, he does not
C. Yes, he did
D. No, he didn't
4. What should you do in the party?
A. Talk to your host as much as possible
B. Move around and talk to other guests
C. Just make friends with friendly-looking people
D. Sing karaoke
5. Before you leave the party, what do you do first?
A. Thank your host
B. Eat all food
C. A & B are correct
D. A & B are not correct

Exercise 4: Read the following passage and choose the best answer:

The population of the world has increased more in modern times than in all other ages of history combined. World population totaled about 500 million in 1650. It doubled in the period from 1650 - 1680. By the year 2000, the population will be about 6.6 billion. Estimates based on research by the United Nations indicate that it will double in the twenty-five years between 1975 and the year 2000.

No one knows the limits of the population that the earth can support. Thomas Malthus, an English economist, developed a theory that became widely accepted in the nineteenth century. He suggested that because world population tended to increase more rapidly than food supply, we should continuously constrain available resources. Malthus cited wars, famines, epidemics and other disasters as in the usual limitations of world population growth. With recent advances in science and technology, including improved agricultural methods and great progresses and in medicine, some of the limiting factors in population growth have been lessened, with obvious results. International organizations have recommended programmes to encourage general economic development that target areas along with a decrease in birth rates to affect a lasting solution.

1. Which of the options below is the best title for the passage?
A. A Brief History of Population and Over-population B. Limiting Factors in Population Growth
C. The United Nations' Estimate D. Thomas Malthus's Theory
2. What is the population from the estimates based on research by the US?
A. Two million B. Five hundred million C. Seven billion D. Over six billion
3. Who was Thomas Malthus?
A. A scientist B. An economist
C. A doctor of medicine D. A United Nations' representative
4. According to the passage, the limiting factors in population growth have been lessened because of _____.
A. precaution B. disasters C. improved technology D. scarcity
5. What do most experts recommend in order to solve problems of overpopulation?
A. Medical advance and improved agricultural methods. B. Famine and epidemic.
C. Economic development and a decline in the birth rate. D. Conservation of available resources

Exercise 5: Read the following passage and choose the best answer:

In Viet Nam, there is great excitement built up well before Tet Nguyen Dan. First, every family organizes a trip to the cemetery to visit the graves of their ancestor. After that, to create an air of prosperity, wealth and fun for the first three days of the Lunar New Year, people are kept busy cooking traditional foods, buying gifts, and making other preparations. Certain items deemed to be bought or made are banh chung, dried watermelon seeds, tea, dried sausages, fruit (fresh and candied), ornamental plants and flowers. Red and yellow flowers are ideal as they make the house more welcoming. On the New Year's days, only good comments and wishes can be expressed. Children receive their "li xi" (or red envelopes with lucky money inside). People make a visit to family members, neighbors, and close friends. And people who live apart from their family try to get together on these days. Clearly enough, games and various forms of entertainment are staged and these often last a week. Varying traditional specialties including wrestling, buffalo fighting, dragon or unicorn dancing take place in different regions.

1. Before Tet, people usually _____.
A. are very busy with the preparations
B. have great excitement and fun
C. rebuild their ancestral graves
D. spend time on traveling
2. Which of the following, according to the passage, is not usually eaten during Tet?
A. candied ginger B. sausages C. watermelon D. beef stew
3. Why are red and yellow flowers popular in decorating the house at Tet?
A. Because they are friendly and pleasant.
B. Because they make the house look comfortable to be in.
C. Because they represent good luck.
D. Because they are attractive and cheap.
4. On the New Year's days, _____.
A. people are busy cooking traditional foods
B. everybody receives their 'lucky money'
C. only good comments can be made
D. houses are cleaned and decorated with trees and flowers
5. Which of the following is not mentioned in the passage?
A. Tet is period of concord and hope.
B. Tet is a sort of bond that ties the living and the dead.
C. Tet is a great season of joy and of entertainment.
D. Tet is an occasion for a family reunion.

Exercise 6: Read the following passage and choose the best answer:

If you plan to visit in October, don't miss the Harvest Festival. The festival offers a variety of activities for all age groups and interests. Children will enjoy listening to traditional stories and learning folk dances. Adults will enjoy the antique show and the crafts fair. Other attractions include a celebration of musical heritage and demonstrations of traditional skills such as candle making, butter churning, and bee keeping. The festival is held at County Fairgrounds, ten miles outside of town on Highway 64 West. Space is available for you to park your car at the festival at no extra charge. The admission fee of \$ 2 for adults and \$ 1 for children is donated to the Preserve Our History Fund.

1. What does this notice describe?
A. A lecture B. A festival C. A school D. A parade
2. What activity is available for children?
A. Dancing B. Painting C. Ball playing D. Singing
3. Which of the following activities isn't mentioned in the notice?
A. Butter churning and bee keeping B. Candle making
C. Cooking D. Dancing
4. How does the advertisement assume that people get to the fairgrounds?
A. Walk B. Drive a car C. Take the subway D. Fly
5. What happens to the admission fee?
A. It is used to rent the fairgrounds. B. It pays the performers.
C. It pays for supplies. D. It is donated to charity.

THE TREAT TO THE ENVIRONMENT**Exercise 7: Read the passage , fill in each numbered blank with suitable word or phrase.**

Nowadays people are more aware that wildlife all over the world is in (1) _____. Many (2) _____ of animals are threatened and could easily become (3) _____ if we do not make an effort to (4) _____. There are many reasons for this. In some cases, animals are (5) _____ for their fur or for other valuable parts of their bodies. Some birds, (6) _____ as parrots, are caught (7) _____ and sold as pets. For many animals and birds, the problem that their habitat, the (8) _____ where they live is (9) _____. More (10) _____ is used for farms, for houses or industry, and there are fewer open (11) _____ than there once were. Farmers use powerful chemicals to help them grow better (12) _____, but these chemicals pollute the environment and (13) _____ wildlife. The most successful animals on earth, human beings, will soon be the only ones (14) _____, unless we can (15) _____ this problem.

- | | | | | |
|----------------|-----------------|---------------|----------------|--------------|
| Câu 1: | A. danger | B. problem | C. threat | D. vanishing |
| Câu 2: | A. forms | B. more | C. marks | D. species |
| Câu 3: | A. empty | B. vanished | C. disappeared | D. extinct |
| Câu 4: | A. harm | B. serve | C. protect | D. safe |
| Câu 5: | A. extinct | B. hunted | C. chased | D. game |
| Câu 6: | A. or | B. like | C. such | D. where |
| Câu 7: | A. alive | B. for living | C. for life | D. lively |
| Câu 8: | A. site | B. pint | C. place | D. spot |
| Câu 9: | A. disappearing | B. escaping | C. exhausting | D. departing |
| Câu 10: | A. soil | B. area | C. land | D. earth |
| Câu 11: | A. up | B. spaces | C. air | D. parts |
| Câu 12: | A. fields | B. herbs | C. crops | D. products |
| Câu 13: | A. spoil | B. wrong | C. harm | D. wound |
| Câu 14: | A. missing | B. left | C. over | D. survived |
| Câu 15: | A. answer | B. calculate | C. explain | D. solve |

Exercise 8: Read the following passage and choose the best answer.

Today I'd like to begin a discussion on the problem of the heating up the earth. First we'll touch on the relationship between fluorocarbons and the ozone layer. You probably remember that the ozone layer is the protective shield around the earth. It is important to all life, because it filters out harmful ultraviolet light from the sun. Ozone itself, a form of oxygen, is regularly destroyed by natural chemical processes.

The problem now is that too much of the ozone layer is being destroyed. Scientists suspect that certain chemicals, such as fluorocarbons, are contributing to the depletion of the ozone layer. And how do we use fluorocarbons? The most common uses are in spray cans and cooling systems. The chemical pollution from these fluorocarbons can account for some of the ozone losses that have been reported. There are, however, new studies linking the sun itself to the depletion of the ozone layer. We'll go into that new study more next time.

Câu 1: Who is the most likely speaker?

- A. A mechanic B. A professor C. A doctor D. A chemist

Câu 2: What is the speaker's main topic?

- A. Fluorocarbons and ozone layer B. Ultraviolet
C. Air-conditioning systems D. The uses of spray cans

Câu 3: What is the most important purpose of the ozone layer?

- A. Providing fluorocarbons B. Shielding the sun
C. Protecting the earth D. Destroying chemicals

Câu 4: What is the ozone layer made of?

- A. Ultraviolet light B. Shields C. Oxygen D. Fluorocarbons

Câu 5: What will the speaker probably discuss next?

- A. The make-up of the ozone layer
B. How to make air conditioners with fluorocarbons
C. Harmful effects of ultraviolet light
D. The sun as a cause of ozone layer depletion

Exercise 9: Read and fill in the blanks with the best answer.

We need energy to live and work. Our major source of (1) _____ is oil. Oil is one kind of fossil fuel. The amount of fossil fuels in the world is (2) _____. Therefore, we must save it and must find new sources of energy. Geothermal (3) _____ and nuclear power are alternative sources of energy. They can give us electricity. Other alternative sources are the sun, waves (4) _____ water. These sources are not only unlimited and available (5) _____ clean and safe for the environment. People should develop and use them more and more in the future.

- | | | | | |
|----|--------------|--------------|-----------------|------------|
| 1. | A. oil | B. fuel | C. heat | D. energy |
| 2. | A. renewable | B. unlimited | C. nonrenewable | D. limited |
| 3. | A. heated | B. heat | C. hot | D. heating |
| 4. | A. and | B. or | C. both | D. also |
| 5. | A. both | B. either | C. but also | D. and |

Exercise 10: Read the passage and do the tasks that follow.

The Asian Games, also called the ASIAD, is a multi-sport event held every four years among athletes from all over Asia. The games are regulated by the Olympic Council of Asia (OCA) under the supervision of the International Olympic Committee (IOC). Medals are awarded in each event, with gold for the first place, silver for second and bronze for third. This tradition started in 1951. The Asian Games are dominated by the People's Republic of China. Competitors are entered by a National Olympic Committee (NOC) to represent their country of citizenship. National anthems and flags accompany the medal ceremonies, and tables showing the number of medals won by each country are widely used. In general,

only recognized nations are represented, but a few non-sovereign countries are allowed to take part. The special case of Taiwan was handled by having it compete as Chinese Taipei due to the political status of Taiwan.

The 15th Asian Games were held in Doha, Qatar from December 1st to December 16, 2005. The next ASIAD will be held in Guangzhou, China from November 2nd to November 18th, 2010.

1. The Asian Games is _____.
A. dominated by the People's Republic of China B. supervised by the Olympic Council of Asia
C. rewarded with only gold medals D. regulated by International Olympic Committee
2. The Asian Games are _____.
A. held every for years B. also called ASIAD C. a multi-sport event D. All are correct.
3. Which of the following sentences is NOT true?
A. In general only recognized nations are represented.
B. Gold medals are awarded for the first place.
C. Taiwan was not represented because of its political status.
D. There are many sports events played in the Asian Games.
4. Where will the 16th Asian Games be held?
A. In Japan B. In China C. In Doha D. In Taiwan
5. The best title for the passage is _____.
A. The Asian Games (The ASIAD) B. The Olympic Council of Asia
C. The International Olympic Committee D. The National Olympic Committee

Exercise 11: Read and fill in the blanks with the best answer.

Each nation has many people who (1) _____ take care (2) _____ others. For example, many high (3) _____ and college students in the United States often spend many hours as (4) _____ in hospitals, orphanages or homes for the aged. They read books to the people in these places. Sometimes the students just visit them, play games with them or listen (5) _____ their problem.

1. A. volunteer B. voluntarily C. voluntary D. Volunteers
2. A. of B. to C. in D. on
3. A. hospital B. market C. school D. college
4. A. volunteer B. voluntarily C. voluntary D. volunteers
5. A. in B. of C. on D. to

Exercise 12: Read the following passage and choose the best answer.

Man cannot exist without air, water and light. Many people think that soil is also necessary to man's existence. Without soil there could be no vegetation, no animals and consequently no people. However, the soil is being eroded day after day because people use the land without paying attention to the protection of land and the prevention of soil erosion. In many rural areas, soil erosion is a **major** problem which endangers the development of agriculture.

1. If there were no air, no water and no light, man _____.
A. would live on the earth B. would survive
C. would disappear from the earth D. could exist on the earth
2. Many people think that soil _____.
A. is useful for man B. is of no importance to man
C. is unnecessary for man D. depends on man's existence
3. The soil is being eroded day after day because _____.
A. people always prevent soil erosion B. people usually protect the land
C. people manage to use the land with care

- D. people pay no attention to the protection of land when using it
4. Soil erosion is a major problem in many rural areas because _____.
A. it can be solved right now B. it is dangerous for agriculture
C. it is the development of agriculture D. it is of great use to people
5. The word “**major**” in line 4 means:
A. unimportant B. smaller C. important D. less serious

Exercise 13: Read the following passage and choose the best answer.

Wild animals and wild places where they live are seriously threatened almost everywhere. One species has become extinct in each year of this century; but many hundreds are now in danger. Lack of attention would lead to the rapid advance of the process of extinction.

Already many kinds of wild animals have been so reduced in number that their role in the ecosystem is forgotten.

But even more important, perhaps, than individual kinds of animals and plants, whole habitats are in danger of **vanishing**: marshes are being drained, and the world forests, especially the tropical forests are being cut down to satisfy man’s need of timber and paper.

1. Wild animals live _____.
A. almost everywhere B. in wild places C. in the ecosystem D. in the marshes
2. Forests are being cut down because _____.
A. they are not useful for man B. they are harmful to the environment
C. they provide man with timber and paper D. they are plentiful
3. If forests disappeared, wild animals _____.
A. would exist on the earth B. would continue to survive
C. would be increased in number D. would be in danger of extinction
4. Which of the following is NOT TRUE about the passage?
A. Wild animals are no longer threatened
B. Whole habitats are in danger of vanishing
C. Wild animals have been so reduced in number
D. their role in the ecosystem is forgotten
5. The word “**vanishing**” in paragraph 3 means: _____.
A. appearing B. disappearing C. existing D. coming

Exercise 14: Read the following passage and choose the best answer.

One of the most serious problems threatening human life is the dirtying and poisoning of air and water. It is the pollution of our environment. Air pollution occurs when wastes are poured into the atmosphere and the air becomes contaminated and unpleasant to breathe. We depend for life on the air we breathe. As the air becomes more and more polluted, hazards to health increase. Today we have industrial air pollutants from factories and mills and engine-exhaust fumes. That’s why some large cities have to ban cars from the city center to **wipe out** smoke and limit the emission of poisonous gases and dangerous chemicals from industrial smoke stacks in order to clean the air in our living environment as much as possible.

1. One of the following is a serious problem threatening human life except _____.
A. dirty air B. the poisoning of water
C. environmental pollution D. environmental conservation
2. The air becomes polluted when _____.

- A. wastes poured into the atmosphere
C. we depend for life on the air
3. What accounts for air pollution in cities today? *{account for sth: explain the cause of sth}*
A. poor health
C. dirty water
4. In some large cities people clean the air by _____.
A. emitting dangerous chemicals into the air
C. forbidding cars from the city center
5. The word “**wipe out**” in line 6 means:
A. ban
B. place
C. change
D. remove
- B. we breathe
D. hazards to health increase
B. automobiles and industries
D. environment
B. emitting poisonous gases into the air
D. building more factories

WORD STRESS (TRỌNG ÂM)

Thế nào là trọng âm từ? Trọng âm từ là lực phát âm được nhấn vào một âm tiết nhất định trong một từ. Khi ta đọc đến âm tiết này thì lực phát âm sẽ mạnh hơn khi phát âm các âm tiết khác.

Để làm dạng bài tập này trước tiên các em phải nhớ rằng trọng âm chỉ rơi vào những âm tiết mạnh tức là những âm tiết có chứa nguyên âm mạnh, nguyên âm đôi hoặc nguyên âm dài.

1) Trọng âm rơi vào âm tiết thứ nhất

Hầu hết **danh từ và tính từ** có **2 âm tiết** thì trọng âm rơi vào **âm tiết thứ nhất**.

Ví dụ:

Danh từ: PREsent, EXport, CHIna, TABle

Tính từ: PREsent, SLEnDer, CLEver, HAPpy

Đối với **động từ nếu âm tiết thứ 2 chứa nguyên âm ngắn và kết thúc không nhiều hơn một phụ âm** thì trọng âm sẽ rơi vào **âm tiết thứ nhất**.

Ví dụ: ENter, TRAvel, Open...

Các **động từ có âm tiết cuối** chứa **ow** thì trọng âm cũng rơi vào **âm tiết đầu**.

Ví dụ: FOLlow, BORrow...

Các **động từ 3 âm tiết** có **âm tiết cuối chứa nguyên âm dài** hoặc nguyên âm đôi hoặc kết thúc nhiều hơn một phụ âm thì âm tiết đầu **nhận trọng âm**.

Ví dụ: PARadise, Exercise

2) Trọng âm vào âm tiết thứ hai

Hầu hết **động từ có 2 âm tiết** thì trọng âm rơi vào **âm tiết thứ 2**.

Ví dụ: to preSENT, to exPORT, to deCIDE, to beGIN

Nếu **âm tiết thứ 2** chứa **nguyên âm dài**, nguyên âm đôi hoặc kết thúc với **nhiều hơn một phụ âm** thì âm tiết đó **nhận trọng âm**.

Ví dụ: proVIDE, proTEST, aGREE...

Đối với **động từ 3 âm tiết** quy tắc sẽ như sau: **Nếu âm tiết cuối chứa nguyên âm ngắn** hoặc kết thúc **không nhiều hơn một nguyên âm thì âm tiết thứ 2 sẽ nhận trọng âm**.

Ví dụ: deTERmine, reMEMber, enCOUNter...

3) Trọng âm rơi vào âm tiết thứ 2 tính từ dưới lên

Những từ có tận cùng bằng **-ic, -sion, -tion** thì trọng âm rơi vào âm tiết thứ 2 tính từ dưới lên

Ví dụ:

Những từ có tận cùng bằng **-ic**: GRAphic, geoGRAphic, geoLOGic...

Những từ có tận cùng bằng **-sion, -tion**: sugges-tion, reveLA-tion...

Ngoại lệ: TELEvision có trọng âm rơi vào âm tiết thứ nhất.

4) Trọng âm rơi vào âm tiết thứ 3 từ dưới lên

Các từ tận cùng bằng **-ce, -cy, -ty, -phy, -gy** thì trọng âm đều rơi vào âm tiết thứ 3 từ dưới lên:

Ví dụ: deMOcracy, dependaBility, phoTOgraphy, geOLOgy

Các từ tận cùng bằng **-ical** cũng có trọng âm rơi vào âm tiết thứ 3 tính từ dưới lên.

Ví dụ: CRItical, geoLOGical

5) Từ ghép (từ có 2 phần)

Đối với các danh từ ghép trọng âm rơi vào phần đầu: *BLACKbird, GREENhouse...*

Đối với các tính từ ghép trọng âm rơi vào phần thứ 2: *bad-TEMPered, old-FASHioned...*

Đối với các động từ ghép trọng âm rơi vào phần thứ 2: *to OVERcome, to overFLOW...*

Lưu ý:

1. Các phụ tố không làm ảnh hưởng đến trọng âm câu: **-able, -age, -al, -en, -ful, -ing, -ish, -less, -ment, -ous.**
2. Các phụ tố bản thân nó nhận trọng âm câu: **-ain**(entertain), **-ee**(refugee, trainee), **-ese**(Portuguese, Japanese), **-ique**(unique), **-ette**(cigarette, laundrette), **-esque**(picturesque), **-eer**(mountaineer), **-ality**(personality), **-oo** (bamboo), **-oon** (balloon), **-mental** (fundamental)
Ngoại lệ: COffe, comMITtee, ENgine
3. Trong các từ có các hậu tố dưới đây, trọng âm được đặt ở âm tiết ngay trước hậu tố: **-ian** (musician), **-id** (stupid), **-ible** (possible), **-ish** (foolish), **-ive** (native), **-ous** (advantageous), **-ial** (proverbial, equatorial), **-ic** (climatic), **-ity** (ability, tranquility).

PHONETICS

I. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the others:

- | | | | |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|----------------------|------------------------|
| 1. A. <u>play</u> | B. <u>place</u> | C. <u>say</u> | D. <u>bad</u> |
| 2. A. <u>case</u> | B. <u>car</u> | C. <u>bake</u> | D. <u>late</u> |
| 3. A. <u>dear</u> | B. <u>hear</u> | C. <u>bear</u> | D. <u>near</u> |
| 4. A. <u>thanks</u> | B. <u>than</u> | C. <u>then</u> | D. <u>these</u> |
| 5. A. <u>sure</u> | B. <u>sugar</u> | C. <u>so</u> | D. <u>she</u> |
| 6. A. <u>poor</u> | B. <u>choose</u> | C. <u>goose</u> | D. <u>too</u> |
| 7. A. <u>cinema</u> | B. <u>cancel</u> | C. <u>centre</u> | D. <u>cigarette</u> |
| 8. A. <u>sheet</u> | B. <u>meet</u> | C. <u>beer</u> | D. <u>need</u> |
| 9. A. <u>teacher</u> | B. <u>Chinese</u> | C. <u>machine</u> | D. <u>cheer</u> |
| 10. A. <u>who</u> | B. <u>what</u> | C. <u>why</u> | D. <u>when</u> |
| 11. A. <u>gossip</u> | B. <u>generous</u> | C. <u>origin</u> | D. <u>gymnastic</u> |
| 12. A. <u>mutual</u> | B. <u>questi</u> on | C. <u>feature</u> | D. <u>confidential</u> |
| 13. A. <u>change</u> | B. <u>character</u> | C. <u>cheek</u> | D. <u>chilly</u> |
| 14. A. <u>incapable</u> | B. <u>life</u> | C. <u>suspicious</u> | D. <u>friendship</u> |
| 15. A. <u>loyalty</u> | B. <u>constancy</u> | C. <u>quality</u> | D. <u>by</u> |
| 16. A. <u>affect</u> | B. <u>appreciate</u> | C. <u>attitude</u> | D. <u>acquaintance</u> |
| 17. A. <u>confidence</u> | B. <u>protect</u> | C. <u>clock</u> | D. <u>constancy</u> |
| 18. A. <u>idol</u> | B. <u>side</u> | C. <u>brighten</u> | D. <u>acti</u> vity |
| 19. A. <u>treasure</u> | B. <u>scream</u> | C. <u>sneaky</u> | D. <u>cheat</u> |
| 20. A. <u>mice</u> | B. <u>mint</u> | C. <u>minor</u> | D. <u>micro</u> |
| 21. A. <u>root</u> | B. <u>tool</u> | C. <u>fool</u> | D. <u>good</u> |
| 22. A. <u>enrich</u> | B. <u>expose</u> | C. <u>engine</u> | D. <u>express</u> |
| 23. A. <u>orchard</u> | B. <u>chaos</u> | C. <u>chalk</u> | D. <u>chore</u> |
| 24. A. <u>enough</u> | B. <u>cough</u> | C. <u>rough</u> | D. <u>through</u> |
| 25. A. <u>machine</u> | B. <u>warshi</u> p | C. <u>parachute</u> | D. <u>attach</u> |
| 26. A. <u>yield</u> | B. <u>wheat</u> | C. <u>wealth</u> | D. <u>yeast</u> |
| 27. A. <u>yearly</u> | B. <u>wear</u> | C. <u>dear</u> | D. <u>fear</u> |
| 28. A. <u>unit</u> | B. <u>usual</u> | C. <u>unique</u> | D. <u>upon</u> |
| 29. A. <u>issue</u> | B. <u>minority</u> | C. <u>childish</u> | D. <u>brighten</u> |
| 30. A. <u>bank</u> | B. <u>again</u> st | C. <u>sevent</u> h | D. <u>avenue</u> |
| 31/ A. <u>donation</u> | B. <u>handicapped</u> | C. <u>annual</u> | D. <u>eradicate</u> |

32/	A. <u>contest</u>	B. <u>sponsor</u>	C. <u>volunteer</u>	D. <u>remote</u>
33/	A. <u>recite</u>	B. <u>upset</u>	C. <u>represent</u>	D. <u>men</u>
34/	A. <u>observation</u>	B. <u>offer</u>	C. <u>apologize</u>	D. <u>society</u>
35/	A. <u>honorable</u>	B. <u>happy</u>	C. <u>handicapped</u>	D. <u>home</u>
36/	A. <u>popular</u>	B. <u>comfort</u>	C. <u>sponsor</u>	D. <u>voluntary</u>
37/	A. <u>government</u>	B. <u>organize</u>	C. <u>figure</u>	D. <u>general</u>
38/	A. <u>part</u>	B. <u>start</u>	C. <u>star</u>	D. <u>award</u>
39/	A. <u>stimulate</u>	B. <u>annual</u>	C. <u>runner</u>	D. <u>accuse</u>
40/	A. <u>two</u>	B. <u>twenty</u>	C. <u>twist</u>	D. <u>twice</u>
41/	A. <u>donation</u>	B. <u>remote</u>	C. <u>hold</u>	D. <u>minority</u>
42/	A. <u>competition</u>	B. <u>competitor</u>	C. <u>contest</u>	D. <u>question</u>
43/	A. <u>wait</u>	B. <u>twelve</u>	C. <u>twin</u>	D. <u>flow</u>
44/	A. <u>sponsored</u>	B. <u>answered</u>	C. <u>enjoyed</u>	D. <u>completed</u>
45/	A. <u>smoothly</u>	B. <u>three</u>	C. <u>enthusiasm</u>	D. <u>think</u>
46/	A. <u>annual</u>	B. <u>traffic</u>	C. <u>athletic</u>	D. <u>achieve</u>
47/	A. <u>dread</u>	B. <u>beat</u>	C. <u>dream</u>	D. <u>mean</u>
48/	A. <u>minority</u>	B. <u>literacy</u>	C. <u>primary</u>	D. <u>library</u>
49/	A. <u>ethnic</u>	B. <u>northern</u>	C. <u>healthy</u>	D. <u>south</u>
50/	A. <u>encourage</u>	B. <u>judgement</u>	C. <u>recite</u>	D. <u>believe</u>
51/	A. <u>country</u>	B. <u>lunar</u>	C. <u>luck</u>	D. <u>plum</u>
52/	A. <u>special</u>	B. <u>breath</u>	C. <u>peach</u>	D. <u>pleasure</u>
53/	A. <u>sugar</u>	B. <u>such</u>	C. <u>spring</u>	D. <u>similar</u>
54/	A. <u>exchange</u>	B. <u>children</u>	C. <u>peach</u>	D. <u>machine</u>
55/	A. <u>shrine</u>	B. <u>ripe</u>	C. <u>agrarian</u>	D. <u>polite</u>
56/	A. <u>raise</u>	B. <u>answer</u>	C. <u>organization</u>	D. <u>rise</u>
57/	A. <u>create</u>	B. <u>creature</u>	C. <u>creative</u>	D. <u>creation</u>
58/	A. <u>reach</u>	B. <u>research</u>	C. <u>increase</u>	D. <u>peach</u>
59/	A. <u>complete</u>	B. <u>contest</u>	C. <u>sponsor</u>	D. <u>observation</u>
60/	A. <u>service</u>	B. <u>disaster</u>	C. <u>happiness</u>	D. <u>provide</u>
61/	A. <u>write</u>	B. <u>wrong</u>	C. <u>well</u>	D. <u>wrinkle</u>
62/	A. <u>laughed</u>	B. <u>cooked</u>	C. <u>watched</u>	D. <u>needed</u>
63/	A. <u>please</u>	B. <u>increase</u>	C. <u>reach</u>	D. <u>instead</u>
64/	A. <u>available</u>	B. <u>land</u>	C. <u>family</u>	D. <u>plan</u>
65/	A. <u>double</u>	B. <u>enough</u>	C. <u>doubt</u>	D. <u>touch</u>
66/	A. <u>time</u>	B. <u>question</u>	C. <u>test</u>	D. <u>train</u>
67/	A. <u>twelve</u>	B. <u>when</u>	C. <u>win</u>	D. <u>answer</u>
68/	A. <u>cat</u>	B. <u>contest</u>	C. <u>receive</u>	D. <u>curriculum</u>
69/	A. <u>house</u>	B. <u>horse</u>	C. <u>honor</u>	D. <u>hospitable</u>
70/	A. <u>what</u>	B. <u>wheel</u>	C. <u>who</u>	D. <u>whale</u>
71/	A. <u>photograph</u>	B. <u>though</u>	C. <u>laugh</u>	D. <u>enough</u>
72/	A. <u>earning</u>	B. <u>learning</u>	C. <u>searching</u>	D. <u>clearing</u>
73/	A. <u>candy</u>	B. <u>sandy</u>	C. <u>many</u>	D. <u>handy</u>
74/	A. <u>given</u>	B. <u>risen</u>	C. <u>ridden</u>	D. <u>whiten</u>
75/	A. <u>probably</u>	B. <u>population</u>	C. <u>gold</u>	D. <u>hospital</u>
76/	A. <u>smallest</u>	B. <u>best</u>	C. <u>longest</u>	D. <u>biggest</u>
77/	A. <u>mountain</u>	B. <u>ground</u>	C. <u>blouse</u>	D. <u>soup</u>
78/	A. <u>stage</u>	B. <u>page</u>	C. <u>cake</u>	D. <u>tablet</u>
79/	A. <u>elephant</u>	B. <u>event</u>	C. <u>engineer</u>	D. <u>let</u>
80/	A. <u>trouble</u>	B. <u>flood</u>	C. <u>shout</u>	D. <u>country</u>

- | | | | | |
|------|-------------------------|-----------------------|----------------------|-------------------------|
| 81. | A. <u>improved</u> | B. <u>glanced</u> | C. <u>phoned</u> | D. <u>supplied</u> |
| 82. | A. <u>variety</u> | B. <u>avid</u> | C. <u>practical</u> | D. <u>stand</u> |
| 83. | A. <u>speak</u> | B. <u>break</u> | C. <u>feature</u> | D. <u>release</u> |
| 84. | A. <u>pretty</u> | B. <u>rent</u> | C. <u>strength</u> | D. <u>medal</u> |
| 85. | A. <u>jumps</u> | B. <u>tenants</u> | C. <u>roofs</u> | D. <u>kids</u> |
| 86. | A. <u>reached</u> | B. <u>managed</u> | C. <u>played</u> | D. <u>formed</u> |
| 87. | A. <u>pastime</u> | B. <u>apart</u> | C. <u>spare</u> | D. <u>discard</u> |
| 88. | A. <u>rugby</u> | B. <u>music</u> | C. <u>undertake</u> | D. <u>dull</u> |
| 89. | A. <u>snooker</u> | B. <u>pool</u> | C. <u>football</u> | D. <u>shooting</u> |
| 90. | A. <u>rugby</u> | B. <u>nearby</u> | C. <u>cycling</u> | D. <u>occupy</u> |
| 91. | A. <u>admired</u> | B. <u>looked</u> | C. <u>missed</u> | D. <u>hoped</u> |
| 92. | A. <u>sports</u> | B. <u>plays</u> | C. <u>households</u> | D. <u>spectators</u> |
| 93. | A. <u>intercultural</u> | B. <u>indulge</u> | C. <u>lunch</u> | D. <u>huge</u> |
| 94. | A. <u>coach</u> | B. <u>discharge</u> | C. <u>character</u> | D. <u>researcher</u> |
| 95. | A. <u>soft</u> | B. <u>month</u> | C. <u>robber</u> | D. <u>stop</u> |
| 96. | A. <u>leaves</u> | B. <u>beaches</u> | C. <u>ranges</u> | D. <u>places</u> |
| 97. | A. <u>noun</u> | B. <u>household</u> | C. <u>campground</u> | D. <u>delicious</u> |
| 98. | A. <u>danger</u> | B. <u>human</u> | C. <u>pollutant</u> | D. <u>balloon</u> |
| 99. | A. <u>entire</u> | B. <u>exhaustion</u> | C. <u>collection</u> | D. <u>modest</u> |
| 100. | A. <u>accompany</u> | B. <u>develop</u> | C. <u>potential</u> | D. <u>sophisticated</u> |
| 101. | A. <u>limit</u> | B. <u>figure</u> | C. <u>iron</u> | D. <u>billion</u> |
| 102. | A. <u>great</u> | B. <u>available</u> | C. <u>raise</u> | D. <u>said</u> |
| 103. | A. <u>supported</u> | B. <u>promised</u> | C. <u>reached</u> | D. <u>developed</u> |
| 104. | A. <u>program</u> | B. <u>earth</u> | C. <u>birth</u> | D. <u>bird</u> |
| 105. | A. <u>purpose</u> | B. <u>pollute</u> | C. <u>accomplish</u> | D. <u>collect</u> |
| 106/ | A. <u>liked</u> | B. <u>grabbed</u> | C. <u>learned</u> | D. <u>showed</u> |
| 107/ | A. <u>learned</u> | B. <u>showed</u> | C. <u>grabbed</u> | D. <u>helped</u> |
| 108/ | A. <u>phones</u> | B. <u>kids</u> | C. <u>seats</u> | D. <u>friends</u> |
| 109/ | A. <u>available</u> | B. <u>alternative</u> | C. <u>endanger</u> | D. <u>accompany</u> |
| 110/ | A. <u>roses</u> | B. <u>villages</u> | C. <u>apples</u> | D. <u>matches</u> |

II. Choose the word whose stress pattern is different from the others:

- | | | | | |
|-----|-----------------|----------------|-----------------|----------------|
| 1/ | A. changeable | B. passenger | C. acquaintance | D. dangerous |
| 2/ | A. affair | B. rumor | C. mutual | D. gossip |
| 3/ | A. embrace | B. protect | C. escape | D. promise |
| 4/ | A. suspicious | B. unselfish | C. sociable | D. incapable |
| 5/ | A. benefit | B. uncertain | C. photograph | D. influence |
| 6/ | A. guitarist | B. importance | C. musician | D. favorite |
| 7/ | A. participant | B. necessary | C. agriculture | D. stationary |
| 8/ | A. comedy | B. comfortable | C. volunteer | D. typical |
| 9/ | A. handicapped | B. advantaged | C. gratitude | D. numerous |
| 10/ | A. campaign | B. against | C. struggle | D. announce |
| 11/ | A. loyalty | B. celebrate | C. effective | D. charity |
| 12/ | A. minority | B. population | C. presentation | D. education |
| 13/ | A. embarrassing | B. memorable | C. eradicate | D. performance |
| 14/ | A. celebrate | B. decorate | C. entertain | D. influence |
| 15/ | A. longevity | B. calendar | C. parade | D. agrarian |
| 16/ | A. represent | B. exchange | C. receiving | D. occasion |

17/	A. percent	B. answer	C. decrease	D. figure
18/	A. overcome	B. participate	C. volunteer	D. understand
19/	A. service	B. offspring	C. pressure	D. biography
20/	A. athlete	B. resource	C. discovery	D. ecologist
21/	A. sponsorship	B. organize	C. voluntary	D. competitor
22/	A. contest	B. remote	C. decrease	D. observe
23/	A. mountainous	B. stimulate	C. effective	D. organize
24/	A. compete	B. smoothly	C. campaign	D. donate
25/	A. remote	B. survey	C. spirit	D. comfort
26/	A. achieve	B. donor	C. complete	D. create
27/	A. competitor	B. contestant	C. gradual	D. completion
28/	A. comfort	B. area	C. college	D. believe
29/	A. performance	B. remember	C. celebration	D. participate
30/	A. spirit	B. create	C. respond	D. complete
31.	A. outdoor	B. pastime	C. include	D. garden
32.	A. bricklaying	B. practical	C. generous	D. improvement
33.	A. television	B. ability	C. necessary	D. conditioner
34.	A. instrument	B. entertain	C. popular	D. quality
35.	A. household	B. provide	C. admit	D. engrave
36.	A. campground	B. discard	C. athlete	D. capture
37.	A. important	B. accomplished	C. fortunate	D. endangered
38.	A. population	B. eradicate	C. enthusiasm	D. psychological
39.	A. acquaintance	B. confidence	C. celebrate	D. ignorant
40.	A. renew	B. promote	C. reduce	D. energy
41.	A. renewable	B. gymnasium	C. solidarity	D. variety
42.	A. envelope	B. classify	C. average	D. accompany
43.	A. pastime	B. basement	C. active	D. improve
44.	A. undertake	B. entertain	C. spectator	D. recreation
45.	A. leisure	B. athlete	C. widen	D. amount
46.	A. consequence	B. survival	C. influence	D. estimate
47.	A. result	B. exist	C. species	D. extinct
48.	A. effort	B. exhaust	C. entire	D. consume
49.	A. enormous	B. tropical	C. plentiful	D. foreigner
50.	A. collective	B. otherwise	C. appreciate	D. available
51/	A. endangered	B. astronaut	C. precision	D. extremely
52/	A. habit	B. solar	C. conquer	D. event
53/	A. average	B. improvement	C. astronaut	D. foreigner
54	A. modest	B. exhaust	C. release	D. precise
55/	A. struggle	B. diverse	C. involved	D. appeal
56/	A. organize	B. hesitate	C. opponent	D. benefit
57/	A. coincide	B. community	C. conception	D. committee
58/	A. envelop	B. astronaut	C. tuberculosis	D. poverty
59/	A. altitude	B. recover	C. comedy	D. library
60/	A. demonstrate	B. beautify	C. successful	D. comfortable
61/	A. accountant	B. discover	C. messenger	D. unlucky
62/	A. marathon	B. advertise	C. industry	D. conclusion
63/	A. subsequent	B. undergo	C. government	D. enterprise
64/	A. chaotic	B. proposal	C. occupy	D. production
65/	A. piano	B. policeman	C. museum	D. souvenir

66/	A. guarantee	B. recommend	C. represent	D. illustrate
67/	A. agency	B. memory	C. encounter	D. influence
68/	A. well-being	B. reality	C. Internet	D. demanding
69/	A. encourage	B. determine	C. emphasize	D. maintenance
70/	A. understand	B. grandparents	C. family	D. wonderful
71/	A. essential	B. furniture	C. opposite	D. fortunate
72/	A. crocodile	B. corridor	C. enormous	D. northerly
73/	A. habitat	B. pollution	C. construction	D. extinction
74/	A. classify	B. biologist	C. benefit	D. serious
75/	A. endangered	B. survival	C. commercial	D. industry
76/	A. mosquito	B. animal	C. crocodile	D. buffalo
77/	A. unnoticed	B. reunited	C. incredible	D. survival
78/	A. imagine	B. opinion	C. incredible	D. wilderness
79/	A. recommend	B. thoroughly	C. travelling	D. fascinate
80/	A. character	B. publisher	C. wonderful	D. understand

PART 2: GRAMMAR

TO-INFINITIVES / BARE INFINITIVES / GERUNDS

(Động từ nguyên mẫu có “to”, nguyên mẫu không “to”, danh động từ)

1. To-infinitive / Infinitive with to (Động từ nguyên mẫu có “to”)

* Động từ nguyên mẫu có **to** được dùng làm:

- Chủ ngữ của câu: *To become* a famous singer is her dream.
- Bổ ngữ cho chủ ngữ: What I like is *to swim* in the sea and then *to lie* on the warm sand.
- Tân ngữ của động từ: It was late, so we decided *to take* a taxi home.
- Tân ngữ của tính từ: I'm pleased *to see* you.

* **V + to-inf**

- | | | |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------|------------------------|
| - hope: hy vọng | - offer: đề nghị | - expect: mong đợi |
| - plan: lên kế hoạch | - refuse: từ chối | - want: muốn |
| - promise: hứa | - pretend: giả vờ | - fail: thất bại, hỏng |
| - attempt: cố gắng, nỗ lực | - tend: có khuynh hướng | - threaten: đe dọa |
| - intend: định | - seem: dường như | - decide: quyết định |
| - manage: xoay sở, cố gắng | - agree: đồng ý | - ask: yêu cầu |
| - afford: đáp ứng | - arrange: sắp xếp | - tell: báo |
| - appear: hình như | - learn: học/ học cách | - invite: mời |
| - would like | - offer: cho, tặng, đề nghị | |

* Trong các cấu trúc:

+ **It takes / took + O + thời gian + to-inf**

Ex: It takes me one hour *to do* my homework.

+ **chỉ mục đích**

Ex: I went to Nha Trang *to visit* my grandparents.

+ bổ ngữ cho danh từ hoặc đại từ: **S + V + Noun / pronoun + to-inf**

I have some letters *to write*.

Is there anything *to eat*?

+ **It + be + adj + to-inf**: thật ... để ..

Ex: It is interesting *to study* English

+ **S + be + adj + to-inf**

Ex: I'm happy *to receive* your letter.

+ **S + V + too + adj / adv + to-inf**

Ex: This suitcase is too heavy *to carry*.

+ **S + V + adj / adv + enough + to-inf**

Ex: He is old enough *to join* the army.

+ **S + find / think / believe + it + adj + to-inf**

Ex: I find it difficult *to learn* English vocabulary.

- Sau các từ nghi vấn: what, who, which, when, where, how,... (nhưng thường không dùng sau why)

Ex: I don't know what *to say*.

* **Note:**

- allow / permit / advise / recommend + O + to-inf

She *allowed me to use* her pen.

- allow / permit / advise / recommend + V-ing

She didn't *allow smoking* in her room

II. Bare infinitive / Infinitive without to (Động từ nguyên mẫu không “to”)

* **V + O + bare inf**

- let
- make
- had better
- would rather

Note: be + made + to-inf

- help + V1 / to-inf
- help + O + V1 / to-inf

- help + O + with + N

Ex: My brother helped me **do** my homework.

My brother helped me **to do** my homework.

My brother helped me **with my homework**.

*** Động từ chỉ giác quan**

- Các động từ chỉ tri giác: **hear, sound, smell, taste, feel, watch, notice, see, listen, find .. + O + V1** (chỉ sự hoàn tất của hành động – nghe hoặc thấy toàn bộ sự việc diễn ra)

Ex: I *saw her get* off the bus.

- Các động từ chỉ tri giác: **hear, sound, smell, taste, feel, watch, notice, see, listen, find .. + O + V-ing** (chỉ sự việc đang diễn ra)

Ex: I *smell something burning* in the kitchen.

III. GERUND (V-ing)

* Danh động từ có thể được dùng làm:

- Chủ từ của câu: *Swimming* is my favourite sport.

- Bổ ngữ của động từ: My hobby is *collecting* stamps.

- Tân ngữ của động từ: I enjoy *traveling*.

*** V + V-ing**

- | | | |
|--|-----------------------|------------------------------|
| - mention: đề cập đến | - quit: từ bỏ | - risk: có nguy cơ |
| - fancy: thích | - deny: phủ nhận | - involve: liên quan |
| - detest: ghét | - encourage: khích lệ | - consider: xem xét |
| - imagine: tưởng tượng | - miss: bỏ lỡ | - It is no use: không có ích |
| - It is no good: không tốt | - postpone: hoãn lại | - suggest: đề nghị |
| - practice: luyện tập | - finish | - admit: thừa nhận |
| - avoid: tránh | - mind: ngại | - delay: hoãn |
| - hate: ghét | | |
| - waste / spend: lãng phí, bỏ ra (thời gian, tiền bạc) | | |
| - have difficulty / trouble: gặp khó khăn/trở ngại | | |
| - can't help: không thể không | | |
| - can't stand / can't bear: không chịu đựng nổi | | |
| - feel like: cảm thấy thích | | |
| - look forward to: mong chờ, mong đợi | | |
| - It is (not) worth: đáng / không đáng | | |
| - keep / keep on: tiếp tục | | |
| - be busy | | |
| - be used to / get used to | | |

* **Sau các liên từ:** after, before, when, while, since,...

Ex: After **finishing** his homework, he went to bed.

* **Sau các giới từ:** on, in, at, with, about, from, to, without,

Ex: My sister is interested in **listening** to pop music.

IV. INFINITIVE OR GERUND (To-inf / V-ing)

1. Không thay đổi nghĩa:

- begin / start / continue/ like / love + To-inf / V-ing

Ex: It started *to rain / raining*.

2. Thay đổi nghĩa:

+ **remember / forget / regret + V-ing:** nhớ / quên/ nuối tiếc việc đã xảy ra rồi (trong quá khứ)

+ **remember / forget / regret + to-inf:** nhớ / quên/ nuối tiếc việc chưa, sắp xảy ra (trong tương lai)

Ex: Don't forget *to turn* off the light when you go to bed.

I remember *meeting* you some where but I can't know your name.

Remember *to send* her some flowers because today is her birthday.

+ **stop + V-ing: dừng hẳn việc gì**

+ **stop + to-inf: dừng để ...**

Ex: He stopped *smoking* because it is harmful for his health.

On the way home, I stopped at the post office *to buy* a newspaper.

+ **try + V-ing: thử**

+ **try + to-inf: cố gắng**

+ **need + V-ing = need + to be + V3: cần được (bị động)**

+ **need + to-inf: cần (chủ động)**

Ex: I need *to wash* my car.

My car is very dirty. It needs *washing / to be washed*.

+ **Cấu trúc nhờ vả:**

S + have + O người + V1 + O vật ...

S + have + O vật + V3/-ed + (by + O người) ...

S + get + O người + to-inf + O vật

S + get + O vật + V3/-ed + (by + O người)

I. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form:

- 1/ I could feel an insect (crawl) up my leg.
- 2/ She saw a man (lie) in the road.
- 3/ Can you hear someone (play) the guitar?
- 4/ When I was young, I used (swim) every day.
- 5/ Adam is used to (sleep) late at weekends.
- 6/ He made me (do) it all over again.
- 7/ I let him (go) early as he wanted (meet) his wife.
- 8/ He was made (sign) a paper admitting his guilt.
- 9/ I saw the driver (open) his window and (throw) a box into the bushes.
- 10/ Ask him (come) in. Don't keep him (wait) at the door.
- 11/ Did you advise him (go) to that university?
- 12/ They made us (work) hard during the course.
- 13/ Would you like (meet) the scientist?
- 14/ I can't afford (buy) a new car.
- 15/ Ted managed (change) my mind.
- 16/ Last week I went to my daughter's soccer game. I enjoy (watch) the children (play) soccer.
- 17/ When I walked past the park, I saw some children (play) football.
- 18/ It was silly of me (forget) the tickets.
- 19/ The policeman asked me (put) my passport on the table.
- 20/ The children love (swim) in the ocean.
- 21/ When I travel, I prefer (drive) to (take) a plane.
- 22/ I prefer (drive) rather than (take) a plane.
- 23/ We would rather (stay) at home tonight.
- 24/ It's late. We'd better (hurry)
- 25/ I saw the balloon (land) in a field.
- 26/ I can let you (have) the book when I've finished with it.
- 27/ We need a table (put) the projector on it.
- 28/ Mike is too short (touch) the top of the shelf.

- 29/ It was clever of you (spot) that mistake.
30/ I would like (welcome) all our visitors.
31/ It isn't easy (understand) the theory of relativity.
32/ I've got something (think) about.
33/ We decided (take) part in the marathon.
34/ It would be safer (keep) the jewels in a bank.
35/ The company set up a website (provide) information.
36/ Tom and Peter go jogging (keep) fit.
37/ My sister is going to the post office (post) a parcel.
38/ I was too tired (watch) TV last night.
39/ His doctor advised him (go) on a diet.
40/ It is important (book) in advance.
41/ It takes me 15 minutes (get) to school every day.
42/ Our teacher made us (copy) the whole page.
43/ Jack used to (live) in Chicago but now he doesn't.
44/ Mary is used to (live) in a cold climate.
45/ We saw a group of men (fight) outside the pub.
46/ It was very nice of your friend (invite) me to the party.
47/ May I change the TV channel , or do you want (watch) more of this program?
48/ When I walked past his room, I heard someone (sing)
49/ The receptionist told me (wait) here until I am called.
50/ We can't decide what (buy)
51/ The main thing (do) is to keep the audience happy.
52/ I think I'd rather (walk)
53/ I really hate (be) late for appointments.
54/ There are some important rules for you (follow)
55/ I was kind of you (make) me (feel) so welcome.
56/ The builders agreed (do) the work.
57/ I told David (not stay) up late.
58/ It was amazing (fly) over the Grand Canyon.
59/ The question was too difficult (answer)
60/ There are picnic tables for people (sit) at.
61/ That joke Tom told really made me (laugh)
62/ They were made (work) very hard when they were young.
63/ I prefer (stay) home rather than (go) to the concert.
64/ We happened (travel) on the same train.
65/ Ann is planning (move) to Ireland soon.
66/ It's too far for you (walk)
67/ My house is only a short walk from here. It's not worth (take) a taxi.
68/ I spent hours (try) to repair your bicycle.
69/ I often have difficulty (read) your writing.
70/ Don't let him (go)
71/ The children love(eat) sweets.
72/ You would be wise (not carry) too much cash.
73/ Have you got anything (declare)?
74/ Would you like (come) to the party?
75/ They intend (keep) the project a secret.
76/ I haven't got enough money (buy) a new bike.
77/ He decided (go) abroad.

- 78/ She promised (not be) late.
79/ Have you finished (wash)your hair yet?
80/ The farmer put up an electric fence (keep) the cows in.
81/ It takes me 45 minutes (cook) dinner ever day.
82/ I put the plates in the oven (warm) them.
83/ Mary is wearing gloves (protect) her hands.
84/ You'll be lucky (wait) less than an hour.
85/ Good restaurants are hard (find)
86/ Do you enjoy (watch) old movies on TV?
87/ I thanked my classmate for (help) me with my homework.
88/ Do you really expect me (believe) you?
89/ I persuaded him (come) for a visit.
90/ She reminded me (lock) the door.
91/ Did you manage (finish) your essay at the weekend?
92/ I can't stand (wait) in queues.
93/ John says he's going to give up (smoke)
94/ Would you prefer me (come) tomorrow?
95/ My brother taught me (swim)
96/ The doctor told me (take) these pills.
97/ I really enjoyed (meet) your parents.
98/ I am sure she didn't mean (upset) you.
99/ I walked into the office and demanded (see) the manager.
100/ Do you wish me (stay)?
101/ He admitted (steal) the money.
102/ If you don't work hard now you risk (fail) your exam.
103/ He avoided (answer) my question.
104/ We're considering (buy) a car.
105/ He delayed (tell) her the news.
106/ She denied (commit) the crime.
107/ It's no use (complain) about it. Nothing will change.
108/ It's a waste of time (talk) to Jack. He never listens.
109/ I disliked (drive) long distances.
110/ I'll do the shopping when I've finished (clean) the flat.
111/ In spite of (employ) a good lawyer, they lost the case.
112/ Paula has given up (smoke)
113/ I can't help (worry) about it.
114/ I keep (hope) he will come.
115/ Would you mind (help) me with this?
116/ I missed (go) to the circus with Mary.
117/ Let's postpone (leave) until tomorrow.
118/ The athlete practised (throw) the ball.
119/ It's not worth (spend) more than \$100 on that bike.
120/ She recommended (see) the show.
121/ My brother offered (help) me (paint) the house.
122/ Is she afraid of (walk) home in the dark?
123/ She suggested (go) to a movie.
124/ All of the members agreed (attend) the emergency meeting.
125/ I don't really feel like (eat) anything this evening.
126/ She advised me (wait) until tomorrow.

- 127/ She allowed me (use) her car.
128/ I asked John (help) me.
129/ Do you mind (sleep) in a sleeping bag tonight?
130/ Don't you ever regret (not work) harder at school?
131/ I've decided (take) a year off studying.
132/ He encouraged me (try) again.
133/ I am beginning (understand) what you mean.
134/ Would you mind (show) me how to work the lift?
135/ He warned her (not touch) the wire.
136/ There is no point in (remain) in a dangerous place if you can't do anything
(help) the people who have (stay) there.
137/ At first, I enjoy (listen) to him but after a while, I got tired of (hear)
..... the same story again and again.
138/ We used (live) in a small village but now we live in London.
139/ They admitted (drive) dangerously.
140/ He warned his daughter (not touch) the wire.
141/ I used (go) (swim) every morning, but I never go now.
142/ Do you feel like (go) to the concert?
143/ Lan promised (not tell) anyone what I'd said.
144/ I can't afford (buy) a new stereo.
145/ My girlfriend persuaded me (have) my hair cut.
146/ You shouldn't encourage anyone (smoke)
147/ The teacher asked Jim (give) his book to Mary.
148/ He agreed (wait) for me.
149/ Did you notice anyone (stand) near the door?
150/ I missed (go) to the circus with Mary.
151/ The athlete practised (throw) the ball.
152/ He left without (say) goodbye to anyone.
153/ They denied (cheat) in the exam.
154/ My mother reminded me (lock) the door before going to school.
155/ Minh refused (lend) me that book.
156/ All of the members agreed (attend) the emergency meeting.
157/ Would you like (have) a coffee now?
158/ They invited us (come) and see them.
159/ I must remember (post) the letter today. It's important.
160/ The police warned the man (not move)
161/ I advised him (go) to the dentist.
162/ Do you want someone (help) you (move) the table?
163/ Going to the dentist always makes me (feel) nervous.
164/ We didn't expect England (win) the football match.
165/ The teacher agreed (have) the lesson outside.
166/ Would you like something (eat)?
167/ The men admitted (rob) the bank.
168/ The film isn't good. It's not worth (see)
169/ What's Carol doing? ~ She's busy (write) letters.
170/ (Not want) to wake her, I left the house silently.
171/ It was a very hot day, so we went (swim) in the river.
172/ The company promised (create) 300 new jobs in the next six months.
173/ I'm considering (apply) for the job.

- 174/ We expected (receive) the machine parts today.
175/ Do you feel like (go) out this evening?
176/ It's nice (be) with other people but sometimes I enjoy (be) alone.
177/ It was nice of you (take) me to the station. Thank you very much.
178/ Was Tom surprised (see) you when you went to see him?
179/ We searched the house, and eventually found her (read) a book in her
bedroom
180/ I heard someone (call) my name, so I went outside to see who was
there.
181/ The president has a team of bodyguards (protect) him.
182/ My mother disapproved of the cat (sleep) in my bedroom.
183/ I watched him (climb) through the window, and then I called the police.
184/ They are trying (prevent) people (get) in free.
185/ We objected to the company's (build) a petrol station in our road.
186/ What are the advantages of (have) a laptop computer?
187/ She calculated how much (pay) on the back of an envelope.
188/ I found that my back stopped (ache) when I lay on the floor.
189/ Almost as soon as I had posted the letter, I regretted (turn) down the
job.
190/ (Learn) a foreign language is very important.
191/ You can improve your English by (read) more.
192/ We don't expect you (work) overtime.
193/ He hates (answer) the phone and very often just lets it (ring)
194/ We can't have a party without (make) a bit of noise.
195/ It's unusual for him (be) ill.
196/ I rang the doorbell, but no one seemed (be) at home.
197/ He offered (lend) me the money. I didn't like (take) it but I
had no alternative.
198/ We hope (have) a holiday soon.
199/ Do you like (take) regular exercise?
200/ Everyone refused (help) the old man.
201/ I stopped (write) (answer) the
telephone.
202/ We didn't expect England (win) the football match.
203/ She doesn't allow anyone (read) her diary, but yesterday she found
her mum (read) it; she couldn't (ignore) the incident.
204/ It's no use (try) (interrupt) him. You'll have
(wait)
..... till he stops (talk)
205/ He is too poor (buy) that house.
206/ We are very happy about your (complete) all the assignments before
the deadline.
207/ I think Tom is very amusing. I can't help (laugh) at his funny stories.
208/ That athlete denied (take) dope before the game.
209/ I want to play volleyball. I hope (choose) for the team.
210/ (Open) the bottle, Mike poured the drinks.
211/ We found Tom (exercise) in the gym.
212/ It is very tiring (climb) up and down three flights of stairs every day.
213/ It was difficult at first, but Mike soon got used to (work) at night.

- 214/ It'll be marvelous for the town (have) some new jobs.
215/ There are lots of activities for guests (take) part in.
216/ Sarah is likely (be) at work.
217/ I don't know whether (buy) the sweater or not.
218/ (Not want) to be late, Jack ran to the station.
219/ There was no way of (get) out of the building except by (climb) down a rope and Ann was too terrified (do) this.
220/ (work) hard all day, Mai was exhausted.
221/ I caught him (climb) over my wall. I asked him (explain) but he refused (say) anything, so in the end I had (let) him (go)
222/ Nick keeps (ring) Rita and (ask) her out.
223/ He made me (repeat) his instructions (make) sure that I understood what I was (do) after he had gone.
224/ I'm sorry (tell) you this, but your test score is rather low.
225/ I'm sorry about (make) all that noise last night.
226/ He doesn't know how (repair) the video.
227/ She has gone to the hospital (visit) David.
228/ They need (study) hard for that test.
229/ We aren't allowed (park) here.
230/ (Pick) up the phone, John dialed a number.
231/ (Spend) all his money, David couldn't afford a new jacket.
232/ I thanked my classmate for (help) me with my homework.
233/ Mary is used to (live) in a cold climate.
234/ Do you enjoy (watch) old movies on TV?
235/ Whenever I meet, Jack avoids (look) at me.
236/ Did Carol agree (go) (camp)?
237/ May I change the TV channel, or do you want (watch) more of this program?
238/ The teacher asked Jim (give) his book to Mary.
239/ Would you mind (peel) that apple for me?
240/ It's important for science students (take) advanced math course.
241/ She is afraid of (live) alone in a big city.
242/ It was very nice of you (lend) me your camera.
243/ It is dangerous (drive) with a drunk driver.
244/ Pam closed the door before (answer) the phone.
245/ Why did you take my dictionary without (ask) me?
246/ The taxi driver refused (take) a check. He wanted the passenger (pay) in cash.
247/ I told David (not stay) up late.
248/ I am too tired (wash) the dishes.
249/ I regret (go) to his party.
250/ Mr. Buck warned his daughter (not play) with matches.
251/ (Feel) tired, they stopped to rest.
252/ Fred suggested (go) (ski) in the mountains this weekend.
253/ Would you please remind me (call) Alice tomorrow?
254/ We enjoy (visit) them.
255/ I will consider (go) with you.
256/ There is no point in (wait), so let's go.

- 257/ My house is only a short walk from here. It's not worth (take) a taxi.
258/ I spent hours (try) to repair your bicycle.
259/ Harry invited the Johnsons (come) to his party.
260/ Don't let him (go)
261/ (Live) in a city has certain advantages.
262/ I don't feel like (attend) any parties.
263/ Don't put off (see) the doctor.
264/ Would you like (come) to the party?
265/ Would you mind (open) the window?
266/ As beginner we can't help (make) mistakes.
267/ He decided (go) abroad.
268/ She promised (not be) late.
269/ Have you finished (wash) your hair yet?
270/ He keeps (ask) me the time.

II. Rewrite these sentences without changing their original meanings:

Exercise 1: Rewrite the sentences

1. The teacher allowed me to stay at home to finish the assignment.
☐ The teacher let
2. The boy ran away from the house.
☐ She noticed
3. He said that he didn't want to learn Maths.
☐ I heard.....
4. The policeman told the thief to empty his pockets.
☐ The policeman made
5. He drove away.
☐ She stood there and watched
6. The robber came from the back door.
☐ I could feel.....
7. Maybe the school will ask me to pay some extra money.
☐ Do you think the school will make.....
8. The police chased a thief yesterday.
☐ I saw
9. There was an earthquake in my hometown last year. The ground shook.
☐ I could feel.....
10. While Polly was working in her garden, the phone rang.
☐ Polly didn't hear
11. My father allowed me to drive his car.
☐ My father let.....
12. I told my brother to carry my suitcase.
☐ I made.....
13. She usually forgets her keys.
☐ Don't let.....
14. When I get up in the morning, the birds are singing.
☐ I like to listen to when
15. Mrs. Lee asked her son to clean his room.
☐ Mrs. Lee made.....

16. Your roommate dirtied the floor.
✗ Why did you let.....
17. A specious- looking person came into the bank yesterday.
✗ The guard observed
18. The patients didn't want to stay in bad.
✗ The doctor made.....
19. I was almost asleep last night when someone suddenly knocked on the door.
✗ I was almost asleep last night when I suddenly heard.....
20. He always makes noise in your house.
✗ You shouldn't let.....
21. Before my son could go outside to play, he must wash the window
✗ I made
22. Max looked the other student paper during the exam.
✗ Did you notice
23. My boss asked me to redo my report because he wasn't satisfied with it.
✗ My boss made.....
24. He complains about being treated unfairly.
✗ Don't let.....
25. Some children were playing baseball at 8 a.m. yesterday.
✗ I saw
26. Other planes took off and landed while I was waiting for my plane.
✗ I watch
27. I allow my friend to borrow my bicycle.
✗ I let.....
28. She always laughs because of her cousin's jokes.
✗ Her cousin's jokes always make
29. Mary walked up the street.
✗ Do you see.....
30. Jim walked to his car, open the door and got in yesterday afternoon.
✗ I observed

Exercise 2: Rewrite the sentences (V-ing after verbs)

1. John listens to pop music everyday.
✗ John enjoys.....
2. I don't remember that I met him in London.
✗ I don't remember.....
3. I suggested that we should visit the Smiths.
✗ I suggested.....
4. Shall we go to circus on Sunday?
✗ Do you consider
5. Why don't you attend his party now?
✗ I don't feel like
6. Do you like to go shopping?
✗ I often avoid
7. Shall we go to Dalat this year?
✗ Do you consider
8. Betty likes meeting people.

- ✗ Betty enjoys.....
9. I want you to live on your own.
- ✗ Do you mind.....
10. It's necessary to water those plants regularly.
- ✗ Those plants need

Exercise 3: Rewrite the sentences (V-ing after prepositions)

1. She insisted that she should be called Mary.
- ✗ She insisted.....
2. He finally managed to get a job.
- ✗ He finally succeeded
3. Tom collects antique coins. He gets interested in it
- ✗ Tom gets interested
4. Farmers add fertilizers to help enrich the soil.
- ✗ Farmers help enrich the soil by
5. They irrigate their fields to reclaim land.
- ✗ They reclaim land by

Exercise 4: Rewrite the sentences as directed

1. Could you turn the radio down, please?
- ✗ Would you mind.....
2. Shall we practice playing football?
- ✗ What about
3. It's not a good idea to travel during rush hour.
- ✗ It's better to avoid
4. He listens to rock music. He is very fond of it.
- ✗ He is very fond of.....
5. Don't you remember you lent me money last month?
- ✗ I can't remember
6. Would you like to stop smoking?
- ✗ Would you mind.....
7. Paul doesn't like talking to them.
- ✗ Paul hates.....
8. I would like you to help me to do some difficult exercises.
- ✗ Do you mind.....
9. Why don't we watch TV for a change?
- ✗ I suggest
10. Do you like to do morning exercises?
- ✗ I often avoid
11. She doesn't like working with young people.
- ✗ She doesn't enjoy

Exercise 5: Rewrite the sentences using given words (Passive infinitive and gerund)

Ex:

Helen expects other people to praise her.

- ✗ Helen expects to be praised by other people.

1. Isabel expected the principal to admit her to the university.

- ✗ Isabel expected

2. Ms. Thomson doesn't want to be called at home unless there is an emergency.
✗ Ms. Thomson minds
3. I expected the Smiths to invite me to the party.
✗ I expected
4. The film star wore dark glasses so that no one could recognize him.
✗ The film star avoidedby wearing dark glasses.
5. My mother took me to the zoo when I was a child.
✗ I rememberby my mother when
6. Peter didn't see me when I was climbing over the wall.
✗ I avoidedby Peter when
7. Everyone trusts that man.
✗ That man seemsby everyone.
8. Foster's company will transfer him to New York.
✗ Mr. Foster hopes.....by his company
9. No one wants to be deceived by another.
✗ No one enjoys
10. Did the man cheat Tom in that manner?
✗ Tom absolutely refused
11. Naturally, I enjoy being promoted to a higher position.
✗ Naturally, I would like
12. That author's friend criticizes him.
✗ That author doesn't mind
13. The manager certainly needs to consider the whole problem carefully.
✗ The whole problem certainly needs

INFINITIVE; GERUND; PASSIVE INFINITIVE; PASSIVE GERUND,

I/ Choose the best answer:

- 1/ We need this report by Friday.
A. complete B. to complete C. completing D. completed
2/ She told him the exhibition before it ended.
A. visit B. visiting C. to visit D. visits
3/ When the car broke down, she started it to the garage.
A. to push B. push C. pushed D. pushes
4/ I meant you last week.
A. phone B. phoning C. to phone D. phoned
5/ Minh refused me that book.
A. lend B. to lend C. lending D. lent
6/ You don't need me back that magazine. I've finished with it.
A. to give B. give C. giving D. given
7/ I expect at the airport by my father.
A. meet B. meeting C. to be met D. being
8/ Do you enjoy by other people?
A. praise B. to praise C. to be praised D. being praised
9/ He hopes a job soon.
A. offer B. being offered C. to be offered D. to offer
10/ She would like a chance.

- A. to give B. to be given C. being given D. giving
- 11/ I'd love Paris some time.
A. visit B. visiting C. to visit D. visited
- 12/ Did you manage out the problem?
A. sort B. to sort C. sorting D. sorted
- 13/ I hope making things worse.
A. avoid B. avoiding C. to avoid D. avoided
- 14/ The food was too cold for Peter
A. eat B. eating C. to eat D. eaten
- 15/ It was silly of Mary away the secret.
A. give B. giving C. given D. to give
- 16/ I am ashamed you what I scored in the test.
A. tell B. to tell C. telling D. told
- 17/ I am ashamed of such a low score.
A. getting B. get C. to get D. got
- 18/ Henry offered for the meal.
A. pay B. to pay C. paying D. paid
- 19/ It's cold. You'd better a coat.
A. wearing B. wear C. to wear D. wore
- 20/ I really dislike to answer questions in class when I haven't prepared my lesson.
A. ask B. to ask C. to be asked D. being asked
- 21/ He was accused of the camera.
A. broken B. having broken C. break D. to be broken
- 22/ her work, she went home.
A. Having finished B. Finishing C. To finish D. Finished
- 23/ sick from eating 2 cheeseburgers, the little girl took some Pepto-Bismol.
A. Having felt B. To feel C. Feeling D. Felt
- 24/ the right major is a tough job for a lot of students.
A. To choose B. Having chosen C. Choosing D. Chosen
- 25/ He denied in the exam.
A. to cheat B. cheated C. cheat D. having cheated

II. Put the verb in parenthesis into the correct form:

- 1/ I tried (persuade) him (agree) with your proposal.
- 2/ He was fined for (exceed) the speed limit.
- 3/ He doesn't want (misunderstand)
- 4/ I hope (avoid) (make) things worse.
- 5/ Sarah reminded Jack (get) the theatre tickets.
- 6/ Mrs. Gates appreciated (serve) breakfast in bed when she wasn't feeling well.
- 7/ The new students hope (include) in many of the school's social activities.
- 8/ Does Dr. Johnson mind (call) at home if his patients need his help?
- 9/ Ms. Drake expects (consult) about any revisions to her manuscript before it is printed.
- 10/ I don't remember (tell) of the decision to change the company policy on vacations. When was it decided?
- 11/ I don't like (stare) at.
- 12/ He doesn't like (cheat)
- 13/ She dislikes (tell) what to do.
- 14/ We expect (interview) next Monday.
- 15/ He hopes (sell) his art to a major museum.
- 16/ He hopes (invite) to Mary's party.

- 17/ We are looking forward to (take) on a tour of Paris by our French friends.
- 18/ I really dislike (ask) personal questions.
- 19/ Mike expected (admit) to the university but he wasn't.
- 20/ No, that's not what I meant (say) How can I make you (understand).....?
- 21/ Jack offered (take) care of my garden while I was out of town.
- 22/ It is important (take) care of your health.
- 23/ My parents expect me (get) good marks at school.
- 24/ Plants want (water) daily.
- 25/ Do you mind (call) at midnight?
- 26/ I don't appreciate (interrupt) while I'm speaking.
- 27/ The teacher is always willing (help) us.
- 28/ I'm angry because you didn't tell me the truth. I don't like (deceive)
- 29/ It's a beautiful day, and I have my brother's boat. Would you like to go (sail).....?
- 30/ The baby continued (cry) even after she was picked up.
- 31/ The film was very sad. It made me (cry)
- 32/ It took me two hours to finish (paint) the wall.
- 33/ The minister agreed (answer) questions. He agreed (interview)
- 34/ Melanie offered (cook) the meal.
- 35/ We are looking forward to (read) your new book.
- 36/ She doesn't mind (pay) low wages at first.
- 37/ He demanded (treat) equally.
- 38/ He demanded (speak) to the manager.
- 39/ It is too hot and my hair needs (cut)
- 40/ We would rather (stay) at home tonight.
- 41/ He made me (do) it all over again.
- 42/ I let him (go) early as he wanted (meet) his wife.
- 43/ He was made (sign) paper admitting his guilt.
- 44/ Ask him (come) in. Don't keep him (wait) at the door.
- 45/ I expect (get) my money back.
- 46/ Did you advise him (go) to that university?
- 47/ I didn't mean (offend) anyone.
- 48/ Did you remember (give) him the book?
- 49/ They made us (work) hard during the course.
- 50/ I want (pay) better wages.
- 51/ He has postponed (take) the trip.
- 52/ You have to avoid (drive) in heavy traffic.
- 53/ I can't afford (buy) a new car.
- 54/ Ted managed (change) my mind.
- 55/ I don't enjoy (laugh) at by other people.
- 56/ The postman complained about (attack) by Nick's dog.
- 57/ We don't enjoy (use) as cheap labor.
- 58/ I'm delighted (see) you.
- 59/ It's easy (run) any kind of software.
- 60/ The children insist on (take) to the zoo.
- 61/ I dislike (make) jokes about.
- 62/ You need (inform) about what (do) in an emergency.
- 63/ (Invite) to the party, we could hardly refuse to go.

- 64/ (Spend) nearly all our money, we couldn't afford to stay in a hotel.
65/ I don't mind (keep) waiting.
66/ I appreciated (invite) to your home.
67/ Alice didn't expect (ask) to Bill's party.
68/ (Hear) a strange noise in the other room, I got up to see what it was.
69/ I regret (make) friends with them. They are triad members.
70/ You should remember (hand) in your writing tomorrow.
71/ I enjoy (entertain) by commercials.
72/ I don't expect (tell) the truth by advertisers.
73/ The little boy was very naughty in spite of (punish) nearly every day.
74. Candice regretted (make) that comment to Terry, so she apologized later.
75. My living room needs (vacuum) I think I haven't vacuumed in more than a month.
76. I want this table (take) away.
77. We had a great time (sail) from San Diego to Catalina.
78. The runner was too exhausted (finish) the marathon.
79. I don't enjoy (laugh) at by other people.
80. Nancy loves (work) at the Museum of Modern Art. She would never want (work) anywhere else.
81/ You must tell me the truth. I insist on (tell) the truth.
82/ Sometimes adolescents complain about not (understand) by their parents.
83/ I appreciate (tell) the news yesterday by someone.
84/ Jin Won had a narrow escape. He was almost hit by a car. He barely avoided (hit)..... by a speeding automobile.
85/ The matter is not worth (argue) about.
86/ The teacher was busy (mark) his students' papers.
87/ A: Do you watch much television?
B: No, I prefer (read) books to (watch) television.
88/ Most doctors would prefer (work) regular hours rather than (stay) overtime whenever it is necessary.
89/ Bill's (fire) one month before he retired was a shock to the whole company.
90/ She quit (complain) about being unemployed and decided (create) her own job.

III/ Complete Mary's letter to her friend Susan. Put in a preposition and gerund.

Thank you (invite) me to come and see you next month. I'm already excited(see) you again.

You must be very pleased (get) the job you wanted. Congratulations. Personally, I wouldn't be keen (travel) forty miles to work. I apologize (not write) sooner, but a week in bed with flu has prevented me (do) anything. I haven't even felt (write) letter today. I must be getting better because I'm starting to feel bored (do) nothing. I'm thinking (go) back to work tomorrow.

IV/ Complete the conversations. Put in a preposition and gerund.

1/ Alice : Matthew lost all his savings in that Internet business that went bankrupt.

Robert: Well, he would insist (put) his money into it. You did warn him (take) risks.

2/ Paul : I'm really looking forward (go) on holiday next week. I couldn't put up (work) in that awful place a moment longer.

Mark : So are you thinking (get) another job?

Paul: Well, the pay isn't bad. That's the only thing that's keeping me
..... (leave).

3/ Lisa: I suppose I'd better get on (clear) up the kitchen.

Carol: It's a pity the men don't believe (share) the work. They always
seem to succeed (avoid) it. I really object
(do) more than my fair share.

TENSES (Thì)

1. Hiện tại đơn (Simple present)

S + V1/(s/es)

S + don't / doesn't + V1

Do / does + S + V1...?

- Dùng để chỉ các hành động thói quen, mang tính chất lặp đi lặp lại.

Ex: She usually gets up at 6 A.m.

- Dùng để chỉ các sự kiện và sự thật hiển nhiên, chân lý.

Ex: Water freezes at 0 degree centigrade.

- hành động trong tương lai được đưa vào chương trình, kế hoạch.

Ex: The new school year begins on September 5th.

* Dấu hiệu nhận biết:

every ____ (every day, every week, every night, ...)

often, sometimes, usually, always, frequently, as a rule

twice a week, once a week

2. Hiện tại tiếp diễn (Present progressive)

S + am / is / are + V-ing

S + am / is are + not + V-ing

Am / is / are + S + V-ing...?

- Dùng để chỉ một hành động đang diễn ra trong lúc nói.

Ex: Listen! The bird is singing.

I am studying now.

- Một hành động dự kiến trong tương lai gần đã được sắp xếp xong.

Ex: They are playing tennis next week.

- Với chữ **always** để diễn tả một hành động thường lặp lại thường xuyên, hay một lời phàn nàn...

Ex: He is always taking exams. He is always studying.

- Hai hành động xảy ra song song ở hiện tại

Ex: She is cooking dinner while her husband is watching T.V now.

- Hành động có tính chất tạm thời

Ex: I often go to work by bus but today I am going by motorbike.

* Dấu hiệu nhận biết:

- Câu bắt đầu bằng một mệnh lệnh như: **Listen!, Look!, Pay attention!, Keep silent! Be quiet!....**

hoặc các cụm từ: **now, right now, at the moment, at the present, today, while, next...** (chỉ một dự định)

3. Hiện tại hoàn thành (Present perfect):

S + have / has + V3/-ed

S + haven't / hasn't + V3/-ed

Have / has + S + V3/-ed...?

* Cách dùng:

- Một hành động đã xảy ra trong quá khứ nhưng không có thời gian xác định.

Ex: I haven't met him *before*.

- Một hành động vừa mới xảy ra, hay vừa mới hoàn tất.

Ex: She has just gone out.

- Một hành động xảy ra trong quá khứ, kéo dài đến hiện tại và có thể tiếp tục trong tương lai.

Ex: My father has worked in this company *for 10 years*.

* Dấu hiệu nhận biết:

never, ever, since, for, recently, lately, just, already, so far, up to now, up to the present, until now, before (trước đây), *yet*, (dùng trong câu phủ định và câu hỏi), *many times, several times, how long, this is the first time / the second time, four times, five times...*

4. Quá khứ đơn (Simple Past)

S + V2/-ed

S + didn't + V1

Did + S + V1...?

* Cách dùng:

- Một hành động đã xảy ra và đã hoàn tất ở thời gian xác định trong quá khứ.

Ex: We bought this car two years ago.

- Một thói quen trong quá khứ.

Ex: When I was young, I often went swimming with my friends in this river.

- Một chuỗi hành động trong quá khứ

Ex: I entered the room, turned on the light, went to the kitchen and had dinner.

* Dấu hiệu nhận biết:

yesterday _____ (yesterday morning, yesterday afternoon,)

last _____ (last year, last night, last week, last month...)

_____ *ago* (two years ago, many months ago, ten minutes ago....)

in + year in the past (một năm nào đó trong quá khứ: *in 1999, in 2001...*)

5. Quá khứ tiếp diễn (Past continuous):

S + was / were + V-ing

S + was / were + not + V-ing

Wh- + was / were + S + V-ing...?

* Cách dùng:

- Một hành động đang diễn ra tại một thời điểm xác định trong quá khứ.

Ex: What were you doing *at 7 pm yesterday*?

- Một hành động đang xảy ra trong quá khứ thì một hành động khác xảy ra cắt ngang.

Ex: Mai was watching TV when I came home.

When they were having dinner, she entered their room.

- Hai hành động xảy ra song song trong quá khứ.

Ex: While her mother was cooking dinner, her father was reading books.

* Dấu hiệu nhận biết:

At + giờ + thời gian trong quá khứ

At this/ that time + thời gian trong quá khứ

Khi hai mệnh đề nối với nhau bằng chữ **when** hoặc **while**...

Hai hành động xảy ra trong quá khứ: hành động ngắn dùng quá khứ đơn; hành động dài dùng quá khứ tiếp diễn.

6. Quá khứ hoàn thành (Past perfect)

S + had + V3/-ed

S + hadn't + V3/-ed

Had + S + V3/-ed...?

* Cách dùng:

5. As soon as Martina saw the fire, she _____ the fire department.
A. was telephoning B. telephoned C. had telephoned D. has telephoned
6. Before Jennifer won the lottery, she _____ any kind of contest.
A. hasn't entered B. doesn't enter C. wasn't entering D. hadn't entered
7. Every time Parkas sees a movie made in India, he _____ homesick.
A. will have left B. felt C. feels D. is feeling
8. Since I left Venezuela six years ago, I _____ to visit friends and family several times.
A. return B. will have returned C. am returning D. have returned
9. Yesterday while I was attending a sales meeting, Mathew _____ on the company annual report.
A. was working B. had been working C. has worked D. works
10. When my parents _____ for a visit tomorrow, they will see our new baby for the first time.
A. will arrive B. arrived C. arrive D. will have arrived
11. The last time I _____ in Athens, the weather was hot and humid.
A. had been B. was C. am D. will have been
12. After the race _____, the celebration began
A. had been won B. is won C. will be won D. has been won
13. Andy _____ out of the restaurant when he _____ Jenny
A. came/saw B. is coming /saw C. came/was seeing D. was coming/had seen
14. While he was washing his car, Mr. Brown _____ a small dint in the rear fender.
A. has discovered B. was discovering C. is discovering D. discovered
15. Linda has lost her passport again. It's the second time this _____.
A. has happened B. happens C. happened D. had happened
16. At this time tomorrow, we _____ our final exam.
A. will have taking B. will be taken C. would take D. will be taking
17. The baby _____. Don't make so much noise.
A. sleep B. sleeps C. is sleeping D. slept
18. Peter said he _____ a test the following day.
A. had had B. will have C. has had D. would have
19. It is not so hot today as it _____ yesterday.
A. is B. was C. would be D. had been
20. _____ a party next Saturday. We have sent out the invitation.
A. we had B. we have C. we'll have D. we have had
21. I'm very tired _____ over four hundred miles to day.
A. I drive B. I've driven C. I'm driving D. I've been driving
22. I'm busy at the moment. _____ on the computer.
A. I work B. I'm worked C. I'm working D. I worked
23. Our friends _____ meet us at the airport tonight.
A. are B. are going to C. go to D. will be to
24. I will tell Anna all the news when _____ her
A. I'll see B. I'm going to see C. I see D. I'm seeing
25. Don't worry, I _____ here to help you
A. be B. will be C. am going to be D. won't be
26. When I entered the room, everyone _____.
A. has been dancing B. was dancing C. had danced D. danced

27. Before the invention of the steamboat there _____ no way to cross the ocean.
A. has been B. could have been C. had been D. would be
28. He said that he _____ his homework since 7 o'clock.
A. had done B. did C. has done D. was doing
29. Tom said everything _____ ready when the match _____.
A. will be/starts B. would be/started C. is/started D. will be/started
30. How long _____ able to drive? - Since 1990.
A. could you B. have you been C. were you D. are you
31. She won't get married until she _____ 25 years old.
A. is B. will be C. had been D. was.
32. Look. The yard is wet. It _____ last night.
A. must rain B. couldn't have rained C. must have rained D. should have rained
33. After Mary _____ her degree, she intends to work in her father's company.
A. will finish B. is finishing C. finishes D. will have finished
34. When he _____ all the letters, he took them to the post office.
A. has written B. had written C. wrote D. had been writing
35. By the end of this month, I _____ English for 6 years.
A. have learnt B. will have learnt C. had learnt D. learnt
36. We _____ in touch with each other for years.
A. will not keep B. are not keeping C. did not keep D. have not kept
37. She has learnt French _____ the age of five.
A. since B. for C. before D. in
38. Tom _____ before we arrived there.
A. has left B. had left C. will leave D. leaves
39. Up to now, I _____ a lot of information about her.
A. learnt B. have learnt C. will learn D. would learn
40. Wait here until I _____ you.
A. am going to call B. will call C. am calling D. call
41. When I came to visit her, she _____ a bath.
A. was having B. has C. is having D. had

EXERCISE 2: Give the right form of the verbs in brackets: simple present or present continuous.

1. I rarely(have) coffee for breakfast, but this morning I (drink) a cup.
2. It(rain) very much in the summer. It(rain) now.
3. The student(look up) that new word right now.
4. Mary (eat) dinner at home. She often (have) dinner with her family at around 6.00 P.M.
5. Be quiet! The baby(sleep).
6. Look! A man(run) after the train. He(want) to catch it.
7. Julia is very good at languages. She(speak) four languages.
8. John(like) to go to museums.
9. Mother(cook) some food in the kitchen at present. She always(cook) in the morning.
10. I(see) that you(wear) your best clothes.

11. I(do) an exercise on the present tense at this moment and I(think) that I(know) how to use it.
12. Ron is in London at the moment. He(stay) in the Park Hotel. He(always stay) there when he's in London.
13. Something(smell) very good.
14. He(practice) the piano every day.
15. We usually(grow) vegetables in our garden but this year we(not / grow) any.
16. They(drive) to school tomorrow.
17. What your father(do)? - He's an architect but he(not work) at the moment.
18. John(hate) smoke.
19. Jerry(mow) the lawn now.
20. Normally she (finish) work at 5.00, but this week she(work) until 6.00 to earn more money.

EXERCISE 3: Give the right form of the verbs in brackets: Simple Past or Present Perfect.

1. My father (work) for this enterprise since he (graduate) from university.
2. We(study) almost every lesson in this book so far.
3. We(never/watch) that film before.
4. It (rain) for over two hours.
5. Mozart (write) more than 600 pieces of music.
6. We(watch) an interesting program on television last night.
7. My wife and I(travel) by air many times in the past.
8. They(travel) to Bombay by boat last year.
9. you(see) Robert lately?
10. I(read) that novel again during my last vacation.
11. However, I (not have) time to read another book since then.
12. Up to now I(not come) up with ideas for my composition.
13. John(write) his report yet?
14. Bob (be) to Amsterdam several times.
15. The Robinsons (live) in Oxford for 15 years then (move) to London in 1998.
16. Mr. Johnson (work) in the same place for 35 years, but he is not planning to retire yet.
17. You look tired! you (run)?
18. Don (fall) the stairs yesterday morning and (hurt) his leg.
19. How long you(live) in this town? - Since I(move) here.
20. Whenhe(start) learning French? - He(start) learning French two years ago.

EXERCISE 4: Give the right form of the verbs in brackets: Simple Past or Past Continuous.

1. How long ago you (meet) Jack?
2. When I(arrive) at his house he (still sleep)
3. Ann (spend) a lot of money yesterday. She (buy) a dress which (cost) \$100
4. As we(cross) the street, the policeman(shout) at us.
5. The light(go) out while I(have) dinner.
6. The children(do) their homework when the father(come) back from the office
7. Bill(have) breakfast when I(stop) at his house this morning.
8. While I(walk) around the park, I(see) Mr. One.
9. When I(go) out the sun(shine).
10. Tom (burn) his hand while he (cook) the dinner.

11. When the students(hear) the bell, they(stand) up and(leave).
12. I was very thirsty. I (drink) the water very quickly.
13. '.....(be) Carol at the party last night?' 'Yes, she (wear) a really nice dress.'
14. The window was open and a bird (fly) into the room.
15. Jim (throw) the ball to Sue, who (catch) it.
16. Christopher Columbus (discover) America.
17. He (have) a drink with some of his colleagues at the pub at 7.00 last night.
18. I (walk) along the street when I suddenly (hear) footsteps behind me. Someone(follow) me. I was frightened and (start) to run.
19. Jane (wait) for me when I (arrive)
20. I haven't seen Alan for ages. When I last (see) him, he (try) to find a job in London.

EXERCISE 5: Give the right form of the verbs in brackets: Simple Past or Past Perfect.

1. They (go) home after they(finish) their work.
2. He(do) nothing before he(see) me.
3. He(thank) me for what I(do).
4. I(be) sorry that I(hurt) him.
5. She..... (not get) married until she (be) nearly forty years old.
6. My friend(not see) me for many years when I(meet) him last week.
7. In England he soon(remember) all he(learn).
8. They(tell) him they(talk) to him before.
9. He asked why we(come) so early.
10. She(say) that she already(write) to Dr. Rice.
11. As soon as Nam (write) the letter, he (hurry) to the post-office.
12. By the time he (arrive), we (already / built) him a house.
13. When I (phone) he (go) away.
14. He (do) his exercise just after he (eat) dinner
15. We were driving along the road when we (see) a car which (break) down, so we (stop) to see if we could help.
16. When we (get) home last night, we (find) that someone (break) into the flat.
17. The film we (see) last night (not be) very good. I (not enjoy) it.
18. The man sitting next to me on the plane (be) very nervous. He (not fly) before.
19. Karen (not want) to come to the cinema with us because she (already / see) the film.
20. At first I thought I (do) the right thing, but I soon..... (realize) that I (make) a serious mistake.

EXERCISE 6: Give the right form of the verbs in brackets: Past tenses.

1. When the phone(ring), I(have) a bath.
2. You(wear) your new hat when I(meet) you yesterday.
3. The house(be) much smaller than he(think) at first.
4. While you(play) the piano, I(write) a letter.
5. Before you(mention) him, I (never / hear) of that author.
6. When he(go) to see them last night, they(play) cards. They(say) they(play) since six o'clock.
7. My friends(sing) when I(come) into the room.
8. The little girl(ask) what(happen) to her ice-cream.
9. He(eat) dinner when I(go) to see him.

10. George(wait) for an hour before the bus(come).
11. Maria(enter) the university after she(graduate) from the community college.
12. When the teacher(come) into the room, the students were talking.
13. Uncle Ho (write) the "Prison Diary".
14. They (walk) along the street when they (see) an accident.
15. I (walk) along Piccadilly when I (realize) that a man with a black beard, whom I (see) three times already that afternoon, (follow) me. I (be) very annoyed, and at last I (stop) him and (ask) him why he (follow) me. The man (apologise) and (tell) me he (mistake) me for one of his friends.

EXERCISE 7: Give the right form of the verbs in brackets: Simple Future, Simple Present or Present Perfect.

1. I'll wait until he(write) his next novel.
2. When you(come) back, he (already / buy) a new house.
3. Don't come until I(finish) lunch.
4. I(hope) it(stop) raining by five o'clock this afternoon.
5. The river(not begin) to swell until some rain(fall).
6. When I(be) in Egypt for ten years, I(write) a book.
7. By next month, I(leave) for India.
8. He(finish) this work before you(leave).
9. The meeting(come) to an end by the time we get there.
10. Before you go to see them, they(leave) the country.
11. I hope they(repair) this road by the time we(return) next summer.
12. You ask him. It's no good my asking him. He(not do) anything I say.
13. As soon as I (clean) the house I (go) shopping.
14. By the time you (come) to visit them, they (leave) for another country.
15. Right after he (have) lunch, he (go) to the seaside.

Exercise 8: Rewrite the sentences

1. Tom began playing the piano 4 years ago.
☐ Tom has
2. I started cooking for the party 4 hours ago.
☐ I have
3. She stated working as a secretary 2 years ago.
☐ She has.....
4. My sister began to study English a year ago.
☐ My sister has.....
5. This hospital began to use laser for treatment 5 years ago.
☐ This hospital has been
6. How long have you studied English?
☐ When
7. The Browns have been living in London for 20 years.
☐ The Browns began.....
8. John has worked for this electronics firm since 1999.
☐ John started.....
9. I've been working for the company for a year.

- ✎ I started
10. When did she begin to do research on lung cancer.
✎ How long

MIXED TENSES

Put the verbs into the correct form

1. I (see) her last year.
2. You (watch) TV last night?
3. I (do) my homework at 7 p.m yesterday.
4. Before she (watch).....TV, she (wash) her clothes.
5. The light (go) out while we (have)dinner.
6. As we (cross) the street, we (see)an accident.
7. Before Alice (go) to sleep, She (call)her family.
8. Rosy (make)..... much progress recently.
9. The bell (ring)while Tom (take) a bath.
10. Daisy (agree)with other members in the last meeting.
11. She (win) the gold medal in 1986.
12. I (be) very tired because I (work) all day yesterday.
13. While my father (read) a newspaper, I (learn)my lesson and my sister (do)..... her homework.
14. What you (do) yesterday?
15. I (not/ meet) such a kind man before.
16. You (watch)TV last night?
17. At 4 p.m yesterday? Well, I (work)..... in my office at that time.
18. David (be) born after his father (die)
19. Up to now, we (have).....2 tests and a quiz.
20. After John(wash) his clothes, he began to study.
21. This is the third time I (try)..... this kind of food.
22. George.....(wait) for one hour before the bus came.
23. Maria.....(enter) the university after she had graduated from the community college.
24. My brother (serve)..... in the army from 1995-1999.
25. By 1995, my father (serve).....in the army.
26. My teacher (give).....3 exercises so far.
27. By the time I got to the station, the train (leave).....
28. When I was a boy, I often (go)..... fishing with my uncle.
29. Columbus (discover).....America more than 400 years ago.
30. I (not/ see)Peter since I (move)..... to Paris.
31. He (feel)..... asleep when he was doing his homework.
32. The house (build).....2 years ago.
33. By the time I got into town, the shops (close).....
34. When I last saw him, he (be).....in good health.
35. When I (be).....a child, I (want).....to become a teacher.

36. Before I went to bed, I (finish).....my homework.
37. What (you/ do).....last night?
38. She went out after she (do).....her exercise.
39. We (not/ meet)each other for years.
40. This is the first time I (watch).....this film.
41. While John (walk) to school yesterday, he (run) into an old friend of him. They (stop) to talk to each other.
42. When the phone rang, Tom (pick) it up at once.
43. You (listen) to the radio every morning?
44. I (not write) to my penfriend very often.
45. I couldn't ring home because I (forget) my mobile.
46. I (read) on the sofa yesterday evening when suddenly all the lights (go) out.
47. I (injure) my leg when I (play) basketball. I (fall) awkwardly.
48. When I (arrive) at the party, everyone (dance)
49. The player (drop) his racket as he (run) towards the net.
50. Tom (break) his leg while he (ski)
51. When Susan (ride) a pony, she (have) a bad fall.
52. My grandfather (win) three Olympic medals when he (be) young.
53. The last time I (fly) was in April.
54. When the music started, everyone (stand) up.
55. As I (drill) the hole, I (feel) a sudden pain in my back.
56. I was feeling quite tired because I (not sleep) well the night before.
57. We were late. When we (arrive), the show (start)
58. Sorry, but you phoned at a bad moment yesterday. I (cook) the supper.
59. Jane felt very pleased with herself. She (achieve) all her aims.
60. Let's go to a restaurant. We (not eat) out since your birthday.
61. Yes, I've washed the dishes. I (do) them ages ago.
62. Terry knew how to read a map. The army (teach) him to do that.
63. There was nothing left of the town. The earthquake of the previous year (destroy) it completely.
64. When Mike (hear) the noise, he (go) downstairs to see what it was.
65. When I (be) younger, I (hate) going out and meeting people.
66. When I (open) the book, some pages (disappear)
67. I (stand) under a tree when it (start) to rain.
68. I called her yesterday. She (cook) at that time.
69. I (clean) my flat for the past two hours.
70. We (work) since 9 o'clock.
71. At this time yesterday I (listen) to music.

72. While my mum (watch) TV, I (do) my homework.
73. When he (come) I (have) dinner.
74. A: What you (do) when the fire (happen)?
75. B: I (call) the fire brigade immediately.
76. A: What you (do) when the fire (happen)?
- B: I (sleep)
77. While she (talk) on the phone the children (start) fighting and (break) a window.
78. After he (finish) breakfast, he (sit) down to write some letters.
79. Yesterday morning, when I (arrive) at the airport, Sophie (wait) for me. She (wear) a pink dress and (look) very pretty.
80. Last semester she (study) so well that she (win) a scholarship.
81. Yesterday morning while my father (water) the flowers, it (begin) to rain. He the (stop) watering and (go) into the house.
82. What exactly you (do) when I (come) to your office yesterday?
83. I (not see) the film last night because I (see) it several times before.
84. By the time I (get) back, you already (go) home.
85. He (drive) along the road when the police (stop) him.
86. They (cook) supper when their guests (arrive)
87. Where you (go) when I (see) you?
88. This time last week I (lie) in the sun.
89. Thank you for your letter which (arrive) this morning.
90. During his lifetime, Charles Dickens (write) many novels.
91. The accident (happen) while he (jog)
92. When he (arrive) at his friend's house, his friend (go) out.
93. When I spoke to the woman I (realize) I (meet) her somewhere before.
94. Mario felt very nervous when he first (drive) in Britain because he (not drive) on the left before.
95. We left the restaurant when we (have) dinner.
96. When my car (break) down, I (phone) a garage.
97. When I (open) the door, a friend (stand) there.
98. I (drop) my bag while I (run) for a bus.
99. Sue (work) at 10 o'clock yesterday morning?
100. He (live) in London from 1992 to 2004. Then he (move) to Manchester.

- 200/ They are in the living-room. They (discuss) something important.
201/ After John (wash) his clothes, he (begin) to study.
202/ Jorge already (read) the newspaper.
203/ At this time last week, we (study) English here.
204/ I (see) the carnival several times as a child.
205/ When I (phone), Natasha (have) a piano lesson.
206/ When I (switch) the TV on, the programme (start) I (miss) the beginning.
207/ When it rained heavily, John usually (stay) at home.
208/ You (meet) your uncle recently?
209/ When the light (go) out, we (watch) TV.
210/ While I (walk) along the street, I (see) a terrible accident.
211/ While I (read), my wife (cook) in the kitchen.
212/ In the last few days I (meet) a lot of interesting people.
213/ I (work) hard all my life.
214/ John (go) to the store before he (go) home.
215/ Linda (forget) to bring her guitar yesterday. I am sure she (forget) about it tomorrow too.
216/ We (drive) down the hill when a strange object (appear) in the sky.
217/ When I (open) the book, a £ 10 note (fall) out.
218/ We tried to keep quiet because the baby (sleep)
219/ The professor (review) the material before he (give) the quiz.
230/ We (correct) our papers after we (take) the quiz.
231/ When Jenny (check) that the children were asleep, she (go) out to the concert.
232/ As soon as I turned the ignition key, the engine (catch) fire.
233/ When he (come) into the hall, everyone (start) cheering.
234/ By the time I (get) to the party, most people (go) home.
235/ I (not laugh) at the joke because I (hear) it before.
236/ I (know) her for several years.
237/ Some people (believe) there is life on other planets.
238/ They (cry) when they (hear) the bad news.
239/ The train (go) through the tunnel when it suddenly (stop)
240/ You can switch off the radio. I (not listen) to it.
241/ What you (do) since you (get) up?
242/ What you (do) before you (go) to bed last night?
243/ I already (study) chapter one.
244/ I (walk) down the street when it (begin) to rain.
245/ Last year at this time, I (attend) school.
246/ I (study) at 8 o'clock last night.
247/ How long he (be) here?
248/ My brother (like) to collect stamps. He (have) a big collection since he always (exchange) stamps with his friends.
249/ I (not go) to the cinema for ages.
250/ How long is it since Mr Pike (die)?
251/ Jane (send) a letter to her university after she (receive)

her scholarship cheque.

252/ He (be) to California three times.

253/ Something (smell) very good.

254/ We (not decide) what to do with the money yet.

255/ Where you (work) nowadays?

256/ A: Will you come home after you've finished work?

B: No, I (meet) Joe in town and we (go) to the theatre.

257/ Tom (burn) his hand while he (cook) the dinner.

258/ I first (go) abroad when I (be) seventeen.

259/ A: Why isn't John at work today?

B: I don't know. Perhaps he (have) an accident.

260/ He (have) a bad fall while he (repair) his roof.

261/ You (hear) his speech on the radio last night?

262/ He (lose) his job last month and since then he (be) out of work.

263/ I (see) you in the park yesterday. You (sit) on the grass and reading a book.

264/ I was in a hurry, so I (not have) time to phone you.

265/ It (not rain) very much in summer.

266/ I heard your brother is a writer. How many books he (write)?

267/ I (go) out last night if I (not have) much to do.

268/ If you (not remind) me, I would have forgotten Jane's birthday.

269/ Cities (be) nicer places if there were no traffic.

270/ Who would you phone if you (be) in trouble?

271/ What (happen) if I press the red button?

272/ If I (know) you were busy, I (not disturb) you.

273/ Our present sources of energy will soon end if other sources (not be) found.

274/ What you (do) for the last two years?

275/ Sue (have) dinner when we (arrive)

276/ A few of our houseplants (die) while we (be) away on holiday.

277/ Fax and e-mail (be) modern forms of communication.

278/ The company's staff (be) worried about losing their jobs.

279/ Lynne Carter (work) for a travel company called Timeways Travel.

She (be) a travel agent for 6 years now. She (be) the manager of Timeways Travel London office. She (have) this job for 3 years. She (have got) a new flat in London. She (live) there for 6 months. Her boyfriend's name is Bruno. They (know) each other for 2 years. Bruno is Italian but he (live) in England since 1987. He (work) for BBC radio. He (have) this job for a year.

280/ We (not receive) any letter from him since he (leave) four months ago.

281/ Hurry up! The train (come)

282/ She (not cook) dinner yesterday.

283/ If you (not like) this one, I will bring you another.

284/ If he (stop) smoking, he could get rid of cough.

285/ If I see Maria, I (give) her a message.

286/ If you found a wallet in the street, what you (do) with it?

287/ A: What shall we do tomorrow?

B: Well, if it (be) a nice day, we can go to the beach.

- 288/ I won't receive the letter tomorrow if he (not post) it today.
- 289/ He (spend) his free time listening to music.
- 290/ I (drive) on a highway when the accident (happen)
- 291/ We (read)..... that book several times.
- 292/**A:** I (not see)your aunt recently.
B: She (not be) out of her house since she (buy)..... her colour TV.
- 293/ We (understand) it after the teacher (explain) it to us.
- 294/ He died after he (be)..... ill for a long time.
- 295/ When I (see)..... him, he (paint)..... his house.
- 296/ I (go) out this evening if I wasn't feeling tired.
- 297/ Before she (go) to college she (work) for a year to earn some money.
- 298/ While he (be) busy at work, his boss (play) golf!
- 299/ After she (see) him at work, she (meet) him again at a party.
- 300/ I (clean) the car while my brother (tidy) the garage yesterday.
- 301/ I (go) straight to bed after the party (finish)
- 302/ As soon as I saw the exam paper I (know) I would fail it.
- 303/ When the sun shines, everyone (look) happier.
- 304/ His English is bad. If he (be) good at English, his father (send) him abroad.
- 305/ She always (finish) her work before five o'clock.
- 306/ When our father was in bad mood, we (not dare) to talk to him.
- 307/ As soon as I tasted the drink I (realize) it (be) too sweet.
- 308/ As soon as I (see) the handwriting I (know) who the letter was from.
- 309/ I got the job after I (have) an interview.
- 310/ Since when he (give) up smoking?
- 311/ She opened the letter before she (realize) it (not be) for her.
- 312/ Where you (go) when I (see) you yesterday?
- 313/ They (cook) supper when their guests (arrive)
- 314/ She (jog) along the woods when she (fall) over.
- 315/ After doing the shopping he (go) to the bank.
- 316/ I (be) in this university since the beginning of this semester. Actually, I (arrive) in the United States six months ago, but I (study) English at this university only since January. Before that I (live) with my brother in Washington D.C.
- 317/You (talk) to Jane lately?
- 318/ Why didn't you listen while I (speak) to you?
- 319/ John is in class every morning from 9:00 to 12:00. Two days ago, I (call) him at 11:00, but I couldn't reach him because he (attend) class at the time.
- 320/**A:** You (see) Peter and Kate lately?
B: Yes, I (see) them yesterday. They (come) out of the park.
They (have) their tennis rackets with them, so I suppose they (play) tennis.
- 321/ If I had had enough money, I (go) there by plane.
- 322/When I (call) her, she (look) for her sister.
- 323/ If the weather were bad, they (delay) the flight.
- 324/ Dick (start) school before he (be) seven.
- 325/ We (not receive) any letter from him since he (leave) four months ago.
- 326/ I (meet) her while she (drive) to her office.

- 327/ She sat near the window whenever she (be) on board the train.
328/ I think he (leave) as soon as he hears the news.
329/ England and Scotland (be) united since 1707.
330/ Since the beginning of the semester, John (read) three novels.
331/ If you don't pass the test, what you (do)?
332/ How many films you (see) this month?
333/ I (be) in the U.S for the last four months.
334/A: When I (be) seventeen I (start) my university course.
 B: When you (get) your degree?
 A: Oh, I (not get) my degree yet; I'm still at the university. I only (be)
 there for two years.
335/ He (work) for Crow Brothers for forty years and never (be)
late. The firm just (present) him with a gold watch as a sign of their appreciation.
336/ What you (do) after you (finish) work yesterday?
337/ Today the weather (be) nice but yesterday it (be) very cold.
338/ We usually (go) to the cinema on Sundays.
339/ If I (know) enough about the machine, I would mend it myself.
340/ If he (prepare) for the interview, he would have got the job.
341/ Where your mother (be) yesterday morning?
342/ Unless it (rain) I'll pick you up 6.00.
343/ You (do) your homework now?
344/ Students usually (take) 4 courses every semester.
345/ Mary (finish) her homework before she (go) to bed last night.
346/ They already (leave) when I (phone) them.
347/ My brother wasn't hungry. He already (have) breakfast.
348/ What you (do) if you owned a boat?
349/ If she (not be) ill, she (go) to your party last night.
350/ If I had a more reliable car, I (go) to Spain rather than fly.
351/ You (have) to take a taxi home if you want to leave now.
352/ Where you (choose) if you could live anywhere in the world?
353/ If we (be) serious about pollution, we would spend more money on research.
354/ We (go) to Rome last year. I (never be) there before.
355/ We (not have) any lunch yesterday. When we came home we
 (find) that the dog (eat) it.
356/ I (write) them three times, but I (not receive) a reply yet.
357/ If you had taken that job in Norway, you (be) able to learn to ski.
358/ Try not to be absent for the rest of the term. You already (miss) too many
 classes. You (miss) two classes just last week.
359/ Two people (die) in the car crash yesterday. They just (overtake)
 a lorry when the accident (happen)
360/ When Margaret Thatcher (resign) in 1990, she (be) prime-
 minister for eleven years.
361/ You already (visit) Paris ?
362/ The weather was so good last summer that we (go) to the beach most weekends.
363/ Since Mr Hassan (become) president, both taxes and unemployment
 (increase)
364/ When she (hear) the result, she was very pleased.
365/ Wait here until I (call) you.
366/ The film already (start) when we (arrive) at the cinema.

- 367/ We (talk) on the phone when my mother (come) home.
368/ Mai (swim) on the sea when she (be) on holiday last month.
369/ I (want) a new car.
370/ *Peter:* You (look) for someone?
Jane: Yes, I (need) to speak to Neil. He isn't in his office.
371/ John (be) a member of the golf club for two years now.
372/ Mary (prepare) the meal before her friend (come)
yesterday evening.
373/ At this time yesterday Mrs. Brown (clean) the floor.
374/ When I (walk) past the park, some people (play) football.
375/ You can take my dictionary if you (like)
376/ By the time we (arrive) at the party, people already (go) home.
377/ I've got a headache. I (have) it since I (get) up.
378/ If the snow (carry) on like this, very few people will be able to get to the concert.
379/ After Tom (finish) reading, he (put) out the light.
380/ When the teacher came in, all the students (stand) up.
381/ Sally (read) to the children while Kevin (wash) up.
382/ Timson is a film director. He (make) 13 films.
383/ I (know) him when we were both working in Rome.
384/ If I (know) that you were too busy, I (not phone) you.
385/ If I (live) out of town, I could take up gardening.
386/ If you had taken that job in Norway, you (be) able to learn to ski.
387/ I promise I will call you as soon as I (get) home.
388/ You ever (go) to the opera when you lived in Milan?
389/ **A:** This rain (not stop) for three days now.
B: I know. You ever (see) anything like it?
390/ The train (arrive) at 4 o'clock yesterday afternoon.
391/ When the phone (ring), Matthew (pick) it up at once.
Jane (listen) to music and (not seem) to hear it.
392/ He greeted me like a long-lost friend he (not see) for years.
393/ I was feeling quite tired because I (not sleep) well the night before.
394/ I couldn't ring home because I (forget) my mobile.
395/ **A:** You look hot.
B: I am hot. I (cook)
397/ **A:** Didn't you see me when you (drive) to work this morning?
B: No, I (not notice) you.
398/ I (eat) a yogurt when I (discover) a dead insect in it.
399/ When Melanie arrived at David's place, he (lie) on the sofa reading a
detective novel. He (buy) it at the second-hand bookshop, and he (read)
..... it for most of the afternoon.
400. How long the children (be) at school?

REPORTED SPEECH (Câu tường thuật)

Câu gián tiếp là câu dùng để thuật lại nội dung của lời nói trực tiếp.

- a. Nếu động từ của mệnh đề tường thuật dùng ở thì hiện tại thì khi đổi sang câu gián tiếp ta chỉ đổi ngôi; không đổi thì của động từ và trạng từ.

Ex: She says: "I am a teacher."

She says that **she is** a teacher.

Ex: "I am writing a letter now" Tom says.

Tom says that **he is writing** a letter now.

- b. Nếu động từ của mệnh đề tường thuật dùng ở thì quá khứ thì khi chuyển sang câu gián tiếp ta đổi ngôi, thì của động từ, trạng từ chỉ thời gian và nơi chốn.

I. Thay đổi ngôi (Đại từ nhân xưng, Đại từ sở hữu và Tính từ sở hữu)

1. Ngôi thứ nhất: dựa vào **chủ từ** của mệnh đề tường thuật; thường đổi sang ngôi thứ ba

I → He / She me → him / her my → his / her

We → They us → them our → their

Ex: He said: "I am studying English at that language center."

He said that

Ex: She said to me, "My mother gives me a present."

She **told** me that

2. Ngôi thứ hai: (You, your)

- Xét ý nghĩa của câu và đổi cho phù hợp, thường đổi dựa vào **túc từ** của mệnh đề tường thuật

Ex: Mary said: "You are late again."

Mary said that you **were** late again.

Ex: "I will meet you at the airport", he said to me.

He told me that

3. Ngôi thứ ba (He / She / Him / Her / His / They / Them / Their): giữ nguyên, không đổi

II. Thay đổi về thì trong câu:

DIRECT	INDIRECT
Simple present - V1 / Vs(es)	Simple past - V2 / V-ed
Present progressive - am / is / are + V-ing	Past progressive - was / were + V-ing
Present perfect - have / has + P.P	Past perfect - had + P.P
Present perfect progressive - have / has been + V-ing	Past perfect progressive - had been + V-ing
Simple past - V2 / -ed	Past perfect - had + P.P
Past progressive - was / were + V-ing	Past perfect progressive - had been + V-ing
Simple future - will + V1	Future in the past - would + V1
Future progressive will be + V-ing	Future progressive in the past - would be + V-ing

III. Thay đổi các trạng từ chỉ thời gian và nơi chốn:

DIRECT	INDIRECT
Now	Then
Here	There
This	That
These	Those
Today	That day
Yesterday	The day before / the previous day
Last year	The year before / the previous year
Tonight	That night

Tomorrow	The following day / the next day
Next month	The following month / the next month
Ago	Before

CÁC THAY ĐỔI CỤ THỂ CHO TỪNG LOẠI CÂU TRONG LỜI NÓI GIÁN TIẾP

1. COMMANDS / REQUESTS (Câu mệnh lệnh, câu đề nghị)

- Mệnh lệnh khẳng định:

Direct: S + V + O: "V1 + O ..."

Indirect: S + asked / told + O + **to + V1** +

Ex: He said to her: "Keep silent, please." → He told her

"Wash your hands before having dinner, Lan." The mother said.

→ The mother told Lan

- Mệnh lệnh phủ định:

Direct: S + V + O: "Don't + V1 + ..."

Indirect: S + asked / told + O + **not + to + V1**

Ex: "Don't forget to phone me this afternoon," he said.

→ He **reminded** me

The teacher said to the students: "Don't talk in the class."

→ The teacher

Tùy theo ngữ cảnh trong lời nói động từ tường thuật said hoặc said to có thể đổi thành **told, asked, advised, persuaded, directed, begged, encouraged, ...**

Ex: The doctor said to his patient: "Do exercise regularly."

→ The doctor

2. STATEMENT (Câu trần thuật)

Direct: S + V + (O): "clause"

Indirect: S + told / said + (O) + (that) + clause

Note: said to → told

Ex: Tom said, "I want to visit my friend this weekend."

→ Tom said (that)

She said to me, "I am going to Dalat next summer."

→ She **told** me (that)

3. QUESTIONS (Câu hỏi)

a. Yes – No question

Direct: S + V + (O): "Aux. V + S + V1 + O....?"

Indirect: S + asked + O + if / whether + S + V + O

Ex: He asked: "Have you ever been to Japan, Mary?" → He asked Mary

"Did you go out last night, Tan?" I asked → I asked Tan

b. Wh – question

Direct: S + V + (O): "Wh- + Aux. V + S + V1 + O?"

Indirect: S + asked + O + Wh- + S + V + O.

Ex: "How long are you waiting for the bus?" he asked me.

→ He **asked** me

"Where did you go last night, Tom?" the mother asked.

→ The mother **asked** Tom

4. DANH ĐỘNG TỪ (V-ING) TRONG LỜI NÓI GIÁN TIẾP

Khi lời nói trực tiếp là lời đề nghị, chúc mừng, cảm ơn, xin lỗi, ... động từ tường thuật cùng với danh động từ (V-ing) theo sau nó thường được dùng để chuyển tải nội dung lời nói trên.

a. Reporting Verb + V-ing +

Deny (phủ nhận), admit (thừa nhận), suggest (đề nghị), regret (nuối tiếc), appreciate (đánh giá cao, cảm kích)

Ex: Peter said: "I didn't steal the painting." → Peter **denied stealing** the painting.

"Why don't we go out for a walk?" said the boy. → The boy **suggested going** out for a walk.

b. Reporting Verb + (Someone) + Preposition + V-ing +

- thank someone for (cảm ơn ai về)
- accuse someone of (buộc tội ai về ...)
- congratulate someone on (chúc mừng ai về)
- warn someone against (cảnh báo ai về)
- dream of (mơ về ...)
- object to (chống đối về)
- apologize someone for (xin lỗi ai về ...)
- insist on (khăng khăng đòi ...)
- complain about (phàn nàn về)

Ex: "I'm happy to know that you win the game. Congratulations!", Jim said to Mary.

→ Jim

I said to the boy: "Don't play ball near the restricted area."

→ I

Daisy said: "I want to be a famous singer in the world."

→ Daisy

Note:

1. Why don't you / Why not / How about → suggested + (someone) + V-ing ...

Ex: "Why don't you send her some flowers?" he said.

→ He **suggested me sending** her some flowers.

2. Let's → suggested + V-ing ...

Let's not → suggested + not + V-ing ...

Ex: "Let's meet outside the cinema," he said.

→ He **suggested meeting** outside the cinema.

She said: "Let's not talk about that problem again."

→ She **suggested not talking** about that problem again.

3. Shall we / It's a good idea → suggested + V-ing ...

Ex: "It's a good idea to go for a picnic this weekend," she said.

→ She **suggested going** for a picnic that weekend.

5. ĐỘNG TỪ NGUYÊN MẪU (TO-INFINITIVE) TRONG LỜI NÓI GIÁN TIẾP

Khi lời nói gián tiếp là một lời đề nghị, mệnh lệnh, ý định, lời hứa, lời yêu cầu, ... động từ tường thuật cùng với động từ nguyên mẫu theo sau nó thường được dùng để chuyển tải nội dung lời nói này.

a. Reporting Verb + To-inf ...

- | | | |
|---------------------|---------------------|------------------------|
| - agree | demand (đòi hỏi) | guarantee (bảo đảm) |
| - hope | promise | swear (thề) |
| - threaten (đe dọa) | volunteer | offer (đưa ra đề nghị) |
| - refuse | consent (bằng lòng) | decide |

Ex: "I will give you my book if you need it," said my friend.

→ My friend **offered to give** me her book if I needed it.

b. Reporting Verb + Object + To-inf ...

- | | | |
|---------------------|------------------------|--------------------|
| - ask | advise | command (ra lệnh) |
| - expect | instruct (hướng dẫn) | invite |
| - order (ra lệnh) | persuade (thuyết phục) | recommend (khuyến) |
| - remind (nhắc nhở) | encourage (cổ vũ) | tell |

- urge (thúc giục) warn (cảnh báo) want

Ex: "Don't forget to lock the door," I said to my sister.

→ I **reminded** my sister **to lock** the door.

Ann said: "Come to my place whenever you are free."

→ Ann **invited** me **to come** to her place whenever I was free.

Note:

1. Lời đề nghị: Would you / could you / Will you / Can you → asked + someone + to-inf

Would you mind / Do you mind + V-ing → asked + someone + to-inf

Ex: "Can you read the instructions again?" she said.

→ She **asked** me **to read** the instructions again.

He said: "Would you mind opening the door, please?"

→ He **asked** me **to open** the door.

2. Lời mời: Would you like / Will you → invited someone + to-inf

Ex: "Will you have lunch with me?" he said.

→ He **invited** me **to have** lunch with him.

3. Lời khuyên: Had better / If I were you / Why don't you → advised someone + to-inf

Ex: "If I were you, I would phone her," he said.

→ He **advised** me **to phone** her.

6. CÂU ĐIỀU KIỆN TRONG LỜI NÓI GIÁN TIẾP

Nếu trong lời nói trực tiếp có câu điều kiện thì chỉ có câu điều kiện loại 1 là thay đổi về thì, câu điều kiện loại 2 và 3 vẫn giữ nguyên hình thức động từ của chúng.

Ex: "If I have time, I will visit her," he said.

→ He said that if **he had** time, **he would visit** her.

She said: "If I had enough money, I would buy a car."

→ She said that if **she had** enough money, **she would buy** a car.

He said to me: "If I had met you, I would have told you the truth."

→ He told me that if he **had met** me, he **would have told** me the truth.

Exercise 1: Choose the best answer:

1. He asked them _____.

A. help him B. should help him C. to help him D. help to him

2. She said that she _____ there the year before.

A. went B. had gone C. would go D. goes

3. Peter asked Jane why _____ the film on T.V the previous night.

A. didn't she watch B. hadn't she watched
C. she doesn't watch D. she hadn't watched

4. They said they _____ us if we needed.

A. help B. helped C. would help D. had helped

5. He advised them _____ in class.

A. to not talk B. not to talk C. to talk not D. don't talk

6. She said to us "Don't be late again".

A. She said us not to be late again. B. She told us to be not late again.
C. She told to us not to be late again. D. She told us not to be late again.

7. "John shouldn't have behaved so badly.", said Janet.

A. Janet doesn't like John's behaviors. B. Janet was angry with John.
C. Janet disliked John. D. Janet objected to John's behaviors.

8. John said "You had better not lend them any money, Daisy".
A. John said Daisy not to lend them any money.
B. John advised Daisy should not lend any money.
C. John said to Daisy not lend them any money.
D. John advised Daisy not to lend them any money.
9. "I'm sorry I have to leave so early", he said.
A. He apologized for having to leave early. B. He apologized to have to leave early.
C. He apologized that he has to leave early D. He apologized to have left early.
10. "Can I borrow your pen please, Sam?", said Gillian.
A. Gillian asked Sam if she can borrow his pen.
B. Gillian asked Sam if she could borrow his pen.
C. Gillian asked Sam she can borrow his pen.
D. Gillian asked Sam she could borrow his pen.
11. "Where did you go last night, Nam?", said Hoa
A. Hoa said to Nam where had he gone the night before.
B. Hoa said to Nam where he had gone the night before.
C. Hoa told Nam where he had gone last night.
D. Hoa asked Nam where he had gone the night before.
12. "What were you doing last night, Mr. John?" The police asked.
A. The police asked what were you doing last night, Mr. John.
B. The police asked Mr. John what he had been doing the night before.
C. The police asked Mr. John what had he been done the night before.
D. The police asked Mr. John what he had done the night before.
13. Some one was wondering if the taxi _____ yet.
A. had arrived B. arrived C. arrives D. had arrived
14. The government has announced that taxes _____.
A. would be raised B. had been raised C. were raised D. will be raised
15. Some one _____ the tickets are free.
A. said me B. said me that C. told to me D. told me
16. He said he would do it _____.
A. yesterday B. the following day C. the previous day D. the day before
17. He proved that the earth _____ round the Sun.
A. had gone B. was going C. goes D. would go
18. I told you _____ the computer, didn't it?
A. to switch off B. don't switch off C. not switch off D. switch off
19. Claire wanted to know what time _____.
A. do the banks close B. the banks closed C. did the banks close D. the banks would close
20. Ann _____ and left.
A. said good bye B. said me good bye C. told me good bye D. goodbye me

Exercise 2: Rewrite the sentences.

- 1) John said, "I want to attend a famous university."
→ John said _____
- 2) "I'm looking for the book you gave me last week," Mary said to Peter.
→ Mary told Peter _____

- 3) Alfred said to John, "I did not promise to send you a telegram."
→ Alfred _____
- 4) "I will get myself a drink," she said.
→ She said _____
- 5) "I cannot drive them home," he said.
→ He said _____
- 6) "Peter, do you prefer tea or coffee?" she said.
→ She _____
- 7) "The film began at seven o'clock," he said.
→ He said _____
- 8) The father said, "I was on a business trip the whole day yesterday."
→ The father _____
- 9) "My brother will get married next month," James said.
→ James _____
- 10) Henry said to his mother, "Come and spend a week with us."
→ Henry told _____
- 11) He said to me, "Keep a seat for me in the lecture hall."
→ He _____
- 12) Mike said to Henry, "Give me my book back, please."
→ Mike _____
- 13) "Don't play on the grass, boys," she said.
→ She _____
- 14) He said, "Don't go too far."
→ He _____
- 15) "Don't make so much noise," he said.
→ He _____
- 16) The mother said to her son, "Don't move, please."
→ The mother _____
- 17) My sister said to me, "Don't open the window."
→ My sister _____
- 18) Jane said to Williams, "Will you be free tomorrow?"
→ Jane asked _____
- 19) Fred asked the postman, "Are there any letters today?"
→ Fred _____
- 20) Richard asked the Browns, "What are you going enter?"
→ Richard _____
- 21) "I was very tired," she said.
→ She said _____
- 22) "Be careful, Ben," she said.
→ She told Ben _____
- 23) "I will get myself a drink," she says.
→ She says _____
- 24) "Why haven't you phoned me?" he asked me.
→ He wondered _____
- 25) "I cannot drive them home," he said.
→ He said _____
- 26) "Peter, do you prefer tea or coffee?" she says.
→ She asks Peter _____

27) "Where did you spend your holidays last year?" she asked me.

→ She asked me _____

28) He said, "Don't go too far."

→ He advised her _____

29) "Have you been shopping?" he asked us.

→ He wanted to know _____

30) "Don't make so much noise," he says.

→ He asks us _____

Exercise 3: Rewrite the sentences (Reported speech with infinitives)

Ex: "Mary should know that we are here now." He said.

→ He wanted **Mary to know that they were there here then.**

1. Joe said, "Please come to my party."

→ Joe invited me _____

2. My teacher said, "I think you could take another English course."

→ My teacher advised _____

3. The doctor said, "Take a deep breath."

→ The doctor told the patient _____

4. My mother said, "Make an appointment with the dentist."

→ My mother reminded _____

5. My friend said, "I think you should take a long vacation."

→ My friend encouraged _____

6. The Smiths said, "Would you like to come to our house for dinner?"

→ The Smiths invited _____

7. My friend said, "You should see a doctor about the pain in your knee."

→ My friend advised _____

8. Sue said, "Don't buy a used car."

→ Sue advised me _____

9. Mr. Gray said, "Don't play in the street."

→ Mr. Gary warned the children _____

10. Bill said, "Don't touch the hot pot."

→ Bill warned _____

11. The secretary said to me, "Please give the note to Sue."

→ The secretary asked me _____

12. My advisor said to me, "You should take biology 109."

→ My advisor advised _____

13. When I went to traffic court, the judge said to me, "You must pay a thirty-dollar fine"

→ When I went to traffic court, the judge asked _____

14. During the test, the teacher said to Greg, "Keep your eyes on your own paper."

→ During the test, the teacher warned _____

15. During the test, the teacher said to Greg, "Don't look at your neighbor's paper."

→ During the test, the teacher warned _____

16. At the meeting, the head of the department said to Mary, "Don't forget to turn in your grade report by the 15th."

→ At the meeting, the head of the department reminded _____

17. Mr. Lee said to the children, "Be quiet"

→ _____

18. The hijacker said to the pilot, "You must land the plane."

- The hijacker asked _____
19. The teacher said to the students, "Speak slowly and clearly."
→ The teacher encouraged _____
20. The teacher said to the students, "You are supposed to come to class on time."
→ The teacher advised _____
21. The general said to the soldiers, "Surround the enemy."
→ The general asked _____
22. Nancy said to me, "Would you please open the door?"
→ Nancy asked _____
23. Bob said to me, "Don't forget to take your book back to the library."
→ Bob reminded _____
24. Paul said to me, "You should take singing lessons."
→ Paul encouraged _____
25. Mrs. Anderson said to the children, "Don't play with matches."
→ Mrs. Anderson warned _____
26. The law says, "Every driver must have a valid driver's license."
→ The law wants _____
27. My friend said to me, "You should get some automobile insurance."
→ My friend advised _____
28. The robber said to me, "Give me all your money."
→ The robber asked _____
29. Before the examination began, the teacher said to the students, "Work quickly."
→ Before the examination began, the teacher told _____
30. My boss said to me. "Come to the meeting ten minutes early."
→ My boss told _____

Exercise 4: Rewrite the sentences (Reported speech with gerund)

Ex: "I gave you my textbook last week. I insist," Tom said.

→ Tom insisted on giving me his textbook the week before.

1. "I must have made a mistake in the calculations."
→ Mr. Forest admitted _____
2. "It was nice of you to invite me to your party. Thank very much."
→ Mike thanked _____
3. "I will pay for the meal."
→ Sarah insisted _____
4. "Perhaps we can go to Paris for the weekend."
→ Neil suggested _____
5. "I'm sorry I couldn't come to visit you the summer."
→ Kate apologized _____
6. "I hear you won the championship. Congratulations!"
→ Dane congratulated _____
7. "You're selfish."
→ Jane accused _____
8. "You mustn't drink too much caffeine."
→ Marta warned _____
9. "I'm sorry I didn't phone you earlier. Jill said to me."
→ Jill apologised _____

10. "Why not decorate the baby's room?"
→ Ann suggested _____
11. The tourist guide said, "Don't walk alone in the street at night."
→ The tourist guide warned me against _____
12. "I can't go to your birthday party next Saturday evening, Jack" said Mary
→ Mary apologised _____
13. The manager said to the workers, "You have done excellent work this month."
→ The manager congratulated the workers _____
14. "I always want to run my own business", she said to me.
→ She dreamed of _____
15. "You told a lie, Tom" she said.
→ She accused Tom _____
16. "To tell the truth, I have driven my car without insurance."
→ She admitted _____
17. "Shall we have dinner somewhere after the theater?" said Peter.
→ Peter suggested _____
18. "I didn't break the windows." Bill said.
→ Bill denied _____
19. "You can't run out of the garden." Ms. Kelly said to the children.
→ Ms. Kelly prevent _____
20. "I feel like seeing you soon, Susan." Said her mother.
→ Her mother looked forward _____
21. "People have a right to say what they think" she said.
→ She said we couldn't stop people _____
22. Mary said, "Let go to a movie."
→ Mary suggested _____
23. Mr. Madison said, "Why don't you buy a motorbike?"
→ Mr. Madison suggested _____

Exercise 5: Rewrite the sentences (Reported speech with conditional sentences)

1. "If I had any money, I'd buy you a drink," she said to me.
→ She told _____
2. "If I catch the plane, I'll be home by five," he said.
→ He said _____
3. "You should stay in bed if you feel unwell." My mother said.
→ My mother said _____
4. "What would you do if you were having a problem with grammar, Jane?" Ann asked.
→ Ann asked _____
5. "If I had my mobile yesterday, I could have contracted you," Mathew said.
→ Mathew said _____
6. "If I don't practice my English, I won't get any better," she said
→ She said _____
7. "I'd been in bad trouble if Jane hadn't helped me."
→ He said _____
8. If you don't apologize, I will never speak to you again," he said.
→ He said _____
9. "If we had a calculator, we could work this more quickly," they said.

- They said _____
10. "What will you do if you miss your plane?"
→ She asked _____
11. "If you get here early, you will have enough time to have lunch." He said.
→ He said _____
12. "If I weren't weak, I would walk." Mary said to me.
→ Mary told _____
13. "If we hadn't been absent from class yesterday, we could have understood the lesson."
→ They told _____
14. "If you see Mss. Irwin, you will give her my message." My father said to me.
→ My father told _____
15. "If you weren't slow now, you could win the race," she said.
→ She said _____

REPORTED SPEECH WITH GERUND & INFINITIVE

- 1/ "Shall I carry that bag for you, John?" said Pauline
→ Pauline offered
- 2/ Jean succeeded in finishing all her work on time.
→ Jean managed
- 3/ "I'll tell you the truth," he said to Joe.
→ He promised
- 4/ "Would you like to join us for dinner," They said to me.
→ They invited
- 5/ "I'll never do it again", John said.
→ John promised
- 6/ The doctor said to him "You should stop smoking."
→ The doctor advised
- 7/ My mother said, "Remember to lock the door."
→ My mother reminded
- 8/ "Don't swim in that lake," he said to his son.
→ He warned
- 9/ She said, "I'll call the police if you don't leave immediately!"
→ She threatened
- 10/ "Open the safe," the robber said to the cashier.
→ The robber told
- 11/ "Sue, can you remember to buy some bread?" said Paul.
→ Paul reminded
- 12/ "Would you like to go to the circus with me on Sunday?" he said to me.
→ He invited
- 13/ I expect that he will arrive on time.
→ I expect him
- 14/ Mrs Black said to her son, "You mustn't leave the door unlocked."
→ Mrs Black told
- 15/ "Would you mind turning the music down?" I said to our neighbours.
→ I asked
- 16/ "I think you should take a taxi," Lan said to me.
→ Lan advised
- 17/ "All right. I won't talk about football," Tom said.
→ Tom agreed
- 18/ "Take these letters to the post," the boss said to Linda.
→ The boss told

- 19/ She said, "I'll call the police if you don't leave immediately!"
→ She threatened
- 20/ She had no intention of insulting you.
→ She didn't mean
- 21/ Exploring the world of Compex is absolutely fascinating.
→ It's
- 22/ "You'd better apologize for being late," said my mother.
→ My mother advised
- 23/ Ann said, "Don't forget to sign the form, Janet."
→ Ann reminded
- 24/ "Don't play the music loudly after midnight," Mr Pike said to his children.
→ Mr Pike asked
- 25/ "I'll write to you as soon as possible," John said to me
→ John promised
- 26/ "I'm sorry I was rude to you, Mary," Jack said.
→ Jack apologized
- 27/ Jane said, "It was me. I ate all the cake yesterday."
→ Jane admitted
- 28/ Peter: I really must go.
→ Peter insisted
- 29/ Angela wishes she had seen that film.
→ Angela regrets
- 30/ Laura blamed Martin. He forgot the tickets.
→ Laura blamed
- 31/ Sue said to David, "You broke your promise."
→ Sue accused
- 32/ Everyone congratulated Claude. She won the quiz competition.
→ Everyone congratulated
- 33/ The thief said, "I didn't steal the car."
→ The thief denied
- 34/ I am happy to look after your children while you're on holiday.
→ I don't mind
- 35/ The doctors succeeded. They saved the driver's life.
→ The doctors succeeded
- 36/ "Thank you very much. You gave me a very interesting book," I said to Lan.
→ I thanked
- 37/ "I'm sorry I made a mistake," Nam said.
→ Nam apologized
- 38/ *Mrs Ha*: You've stolen my money.
 The boy: Oh ... no, I've just arrived here. I don't know anything about it.
→ The boy denied
- 39/ "I've always wanted to become a scientist," Bob said.
→ Bob has always dreamed
- 40/ "I'm sorry I didn't attend the meeting," Jane said.
→ Jane apologized
- 41/ "Shall we go to Paris for the weekend?" Mary said."
→ Mary suggested
- 42/ "I must see the manager!" he said.
→ He insisted
- 43/ "You've broken my radio, Frank!" said Jane.
→ Jane accused
- 44/ Mr Black: Paris is very interesting! We'll come there again!
 Mrs Black: I think so.

- Mr and Mrs Black were thinking
45/ "I can't let you buy that car, Tom," his mother said.
→ Tom's mother prevented
46/ "Don't forget to brush your teeth before going to bed," my mother said.
→ My mother reminded
47/ "I didn't take the money," the boy said.
→ The boy denied
48/ Peter had driven five hours to the meeting. He learnt that it had been postponed.
→ Having
49/ "Don't touch the wire," I said to the child.
→ I warned
50/ The visitors had to wait in the rain. They were complaining about it.
→ The visitors were complaining
51/ "Would you mind moving to another table?" the waiter said to me
→ The waiter asked
52/ "I'm sorry that I got the message wrong," John said.
→ John apologized
53/ "Why didn't you tell me the truth?" he said to me.
→ He accused
54/ "I stole the bicycle," the thief said.
→ The thief admitted.....
55/ "It was very nice of you to lend me the dictionary. Thank you very much."
→ He thanked
56/ "I wish I were a film star," she said
→ She dreamed
57/ "I didn't break into her flat," the boy said.
→ The boy denied
58/ "I'm sorry I didn't attend the meeting." She said.
→ She apologized
59/ "I will do the shopping for you. I insist," Lan said to me.
→ Lan insisted
60/ "I hear you passed your driving test. Congratulations!" Nam said to Lan.
→ Nam congratulated
61/ "I can't let you stay out tonight," his mother said
→ His mother prevented
62/ "You told lies to me," the teacher said to us.
→ The teacher accused
63/ "Let's go for a walk," he said.
→ He suggested
64/ "Yes, I drove fast," the man said.
→ The man admitted
65/ "Would you like to go to the concert with me?" I said to Susan.
→ I invited
66/ "You should take the job, Frank" she said
→ She encouraged
67/ "I'll take you to town," he said to me.
→ He offered
68/ "I'll collect the children from school today," he said.
→ He promised
69/ "You should read through your notes," the teacher said.
→ The teacher suggested
70/ "Can you give me a lift to the station?" she said to him.
→ She asked

- 71/ The driver of the car said "I didn't have a licence."
→ The driver of the car admitted
- 72/ I would like you to help me to put the chairs away.
→ Do you mind?
- 73/ "Don't forget to do this homework," the teacher said to us.
→ The teacher reminded
- 74/ He was sorry he hadn't said goodbye to her at the airport.
→ He regretted
- 75/ "Shall I carry that bag for you, John?" said Pauline
→ Pauline offered
- 76/ Jean succeeded in finishing all her work on time.
→ Jean managed
- 77/ "I'll tell you the truth," he said to Joe.
→ He promised
- 78/ "Would you like to join us for dinner," They said to me.
→ They invited
- 79/ "Would you like to go to the circus with me on Sunday?" he said to me.
→ He invited
- 80/ "Would you like to go to a party?" They asked us.
→ They invited
- 81/ "Listen to what I'm saying," he said to her.
→ He told
- 82/ "Can you lend me some money?" I asked him.
→ I asked him
- 83/ "Get out of your car," the policeman told the woman
→ The policeman ordered
- 84/ "Don't be late for work again," my boss told me.
→ My boss warned
- 85/ "I am sorry I broke my promise," Jane said.
→ Jane apologized
- 86/ "You lent me the book. Thank you very much," Mai said to Nam.
→ Mai thanked
- 87/ "I must go to see the bank manager," he said.
→ He insisted
- 88/ "I didn't know anything about it," the boy said.
→ The boy denied
- 89/ "Please buy some bread, Jane," I said.
→ I asked
- 90/ "Don't tell anyone about my new address," Miss White said to her mother.
→ Miss White told
- 91/ "You should go to the dentist," he said to her.
→ He advised
- 92/ "I will clean the house," she said.
→ She promised
- 93/ "I'm sorry I didn't phone you earlier," I said to Susan.
→ I apologized
- 94/ "It was nice of you to look after my children. Thank you very much." Mrs Black said to me.
→ Mrs Black thanked
- 95/ "Don't walk in the grass," the man said to us.
→ The man told
- 96/ "Can you pass the salt, please?" She said to me.
→ She asked

97/ "Stop talking and start studying," the teacher said to us.

→ The teacher told

98/ His parents allowed him to go to the zoo with his friends.

→ His parents let

99/ "Don't tell Mary about the exam results," I said to John

→ I told John

100/ "You should stop playing football," I said to Nam.

→ I advised

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES (Câu điều kiện)

TYPE 1: điều kiện có thể xảy ra ở hiện tại hoặc tương lai

V1(s/es)	will / shall / can + V1
If + S +	S +
don't / doesn't + V1	won't / can't / shan't + V1

EX: If I save enough money, I will buy a new car.

TYPE 2: điều kiện không có thật ở hiện tại

V2/-ed	could / would/ should + V1
If + S +	S +
didn't + V1	couldn't / wouldn't / shouldn't + V1

EX: If I were you, I would tell the truth.

TYPE 3: điều kiện không có thật ở quá khứ

had + V3/-ed	could / would/ should + have + V3/-ed
If + S +	S +
hadn't + V3 /-ed	couldn't / wouldn't / shouldn't + have + V3/-ed

EX: If I had arrived ten minutes earlier, I would have got a seat.

- **Note:** Ta có thể lược bỏ "If" đi nhưng phải đảo ngữ

EX: Had I arrived ten minutes earlier, I would have got a seat.

- **Unless = If ... not**

- Đổi từ if sang unless:

IF	UNLESS
Khẳng định	Khẳng định (động từ trong mệnh đề chính đổi sang phủ định)
Phủ định	Khẳng định (mệnh đề chính không thay đổi)

Ex: If we had more rain, our crops would grow faster.

Unless

If she doesn't work harder, she will fail the exam.

Unless

- Dạng câu: **Mệnh lệnh + or + Clause**

- **If you don't + V1, Clause**

- **If you aren't + ..., Clause**

Ex: Be carefull or you will cut yourself. → If

Go away or I will call the police. → If

- **NÓI 2 CÂU ĐƠN DÙNG "IF"**

- **Note:**

+ Diễn tả 1 hành động có thể xảy ra ở hiện tại hoặc tương lai → loại 1

+ Diễn tả 1 hành động không thể xảy ra ở hiện tại (động từ ở hiện tại) → loại 2

+ Diễn tả 1 hành động không thể xảy ra ở quá khứ (động từ ở quá khứ) → loại 3

EX: Hurry up or you will be late.

→ If you don't hurry, you will be late.

EX: She doesn't have a car. She doesn't go out in the evening.

→ If she had a car, she would go out in the evening.

EX: We cancelled the meeting because Peter didn't come.

→ If Peter had come, we wouldn't have cancelled the meeting.

→ Had Peter come, we wouldn't have cancelled the meeting.

I. Put the verb in brackets into the correct tenses:

1/ If I (go) to Leipzig, I'll visit the zoo.

2/ If it (not rain), we'd be in the garden.

3/ If you (wear) a lighter jacket, the car driver would have seen you earlier.

4/ We (watch) TV tonight if Peter hadn't bought the theatre tickets.

5/ She wouldn't have had two laptops if she (not sign) the contract.

6/ If I (be) a millionaire, I (live) in Beverly Hills.

7/ You would save energy if you (switch off) the lights more often.

8/ If we had read the book, we (understand) the film.

9/ My sister could score better on the test if the teacher (explain) the grammar once more.

10/ They (arrive) on time if they hadn't missed the train.

11/ What you (do) if you were given the Nobel Prize?

12/ If I (know) that teacher was coming, I (join) the excursion.

13/ If you (heat) water to 100 degrees, it (boil)

14/ You (not open) the bottle unless you (use) a bottle opener.

15/ If you (meet) Mr Leech, can you ask him a favour, please?

16/ They (not escape) if the police had been faster.

17/ Whales (not disappear) if we (be) conscious about it.

18/ Where you (travel) if you won the lottery?

19/ If Susan takes her driving lessons regularly, she (pass) her driving test.

- 20/ If you (not/manage)to finish the catalogue on time, we'll have to postpone the printing until next month.
- 21/ What you (do) if I hadn't lent you the money?
- 22/ If he (be) sick, he would stay home today.
- 23/ If we (have)plenty of time, we will finish the project on time.
- 24/ I wouldn't have hired a car if I (know) how expensive it was.
- 25/ If we had got to the cinema earlier, we (not miss) the start of the film.
- 26/ If you go to the Post Office, please (mail) this letter for me.
- 27/ What you (do) if you (be) a billionaire?
- 28/ If I (be) you I (tell) him the truth.
- 29/ If he (not speak) so quickly, you could understand him.
- 30/ I (play) tennis if the weather (be) nice next Saturday.
- 31/ She (buy) the house if she had found the right buyer.
- 32/ If you (not practise) speaking English, you'll fail the oral test.
- 33/ I (apply).....for that job if I (be) ten years younger.
- 34/ You will be cold unless you (wear) a coat.
- 35/ If I (not be) so busy yesterday I (visit) you.
- 36/ If everyone comes to the party, there (be) rooms for them.
- 37/ If you (feel) too hot during the night, turn down the central heating.
- 38/ What you (do) if the weather (be) nice tomorrow?
- 39/ You (not pass) the test if you don't study hard.
- 40/ If it (not rain), the party will be held outside.
- 41/ If Linda (be) at home yesterday, I would have visited her.
- 42/ If the weather (be) nice today, we would go to the zoo.
- 43/ If I hadn't slipped on the ice, I (not break) my arm.
- 44/ Sally would answer the phone if she (be) in her office right now.
- 45/ I don't have enough money. If I (have) enough money, I (buy) that book.
- 46/ He is too short. If he (be) taller, he (reach) the top of the board.
- 47/ If I (see) you at the bus stop yesterday, I (give) you a lift.
- 48/ If I could understand computer, my life (be) a lot simpler.
- 49/ If anybody (want) to leave early, they can.
- 50/ Were you more careful, you (not make) so many mistakes.

II. Rewrite the sentences without changing their original meaning

- 1/ My uncle missed his plane because he didn't wake up on time.
➤ If
- 2/ Mrs. Newton was late to the meeting, so the chairman got angry with her.
➤ If
- 3/ They gave Alex the job because he got the highest point in the test.
➤ If
- 4/ I was very nervous because I lost the car keys.
➤ If
- 5/ Nielsen didn't see the red light so he crashed into a car.
➤ If
- 6/ As he worked too fast, he made too many mistakes.
➤ If
- 7/ I shouted at my girlfriend so she left me.
➤ If

8/ She didn't buy him a birthday present, so she didn't go to the birthday party.

➤ If

9/ The Coca Cola Company advertises its products well, so people prefer drinking them.

➤ If

10/ My sister is so busy that she can't come to the cinema with us.

➤ If

11/ You can't lift this TV. It's too heavy.

➤ If

12/ Peter gets bad marks because he doesn't prepare his lessons well.

➤ If

13/ He doesn't apply for the job because he doesn't have enough qualifications.

➤ If

14/ Because you speak English unnaturally, they do not understand you.

➤ If

15/ Max spent less time working and more time playing, so his boss fired him.

➤ If

16/ If you don't stop at the service station, we'll run out of gas.

➤ Unless

17/ If it doesn't rain, we'll go out for a walk.

➤ Unless

18/ I don't make all of my own meals because I am not a good cook.

➤ If

19/ He is busy right now, so he can't help us.

➤ If

20/ Peter didn't know that Sue wanted to go to the soccer game, so he didn't buy another ticket.

➤ If

21/ He didn't know that there was a test yesterday, so he didn't study.

➤ If

22/ I won't buy it because I don't have enough money.

➤ If

23/ Jack came, so I wasn't disappointed.

➤ If

24/ Helen is sick because she didn't follow the doctor's orders.

➤ If

25/ The room is full of flies because you leave the door open.

➤ If

26/ I caught the bus, so I didn't take a taxi.

➤ If

27/ I overslept because I didn't set the alarm.

➤ If

28/ They won't move to a larger house because they don't have enough money.

➤ If

29/ They didn't come to supper because you didn't invite them.

➤ If

30/ The dogs barked because they recognized the men.

➤ If

31/ Why don't you accept their offer of the job in Paris?

➤ If

32/ I sat next to the window, because I wanted to see out.

- If
33/ I waved my arms, because I wanted them to see me.
- If
34/ She spends Sundays in the garden if the weather isn't awful.
- Unless
35/ Unfortunately I didn't see him, so I couldn't give him your message.
- If
36/ She is often absent from class, so she can't keep pace with her classmates.
- If
37/ I had a terrible headache, so I didn't finish my homework last night.
- If
38/ If Jane doesn't work harder, she will be sacked.
- Unless
39/ She has to go to class this afternoon so she can't go downtown with you.
- If
40/ I didn't phone him because I didn't have his phone number.
- Had
41/ You haven't got a pen, so you can't write down the address.
- If
42/ Study hard or you won't pass the exam.
- Unless
43/ You don't work hard, so you won't be successful in anything that you do.
- If
44/ I don't buy the computer because it has a small memory.
- If the computer
45/ He didn't try hard, so he failed the driving test.
- If
46/ If she doesn't get up early, she will be late for class.
- Unless
47/ If the bus doesn't come soon, I'll walk home.
- Unless
48/ Mark is injured, so he can't play tennis now.
- If
49/ If you don't practice more, you can't speak English fluently.
- Unless
50/ He is upset because his marks are very bad.
- If
51/ The champion didn't take the fight seriously at first; that's why he didn't win.
- If
52/ The baby didn't cry, so we had a good sleep.
- If
53/ Do it again more carefully or you'll get bad marks.
- If
54/ Sally doesn't answer the phone because she isn't in her office.
- If
55/ John was dismissed because of his carelessness.
- If
56/ I don't like those stories because they have unhappy endings.
- If

57/ We stayed at home because Jane wasn't very keen on going out.

➤ If

58/ My sister is too short. She can't touch the shelf.

➤ If

59/ Jack returned the money because he was honest.

➤ If Jack

60/ I won't receive the letter tomorrow if he doesn't post it today.

➤ Unless

61/ John missed the film because his car broke down.

→ If

62/ We didn't get a lift so we were late for the train.

→ Had

63/ If you should need my help, please call.

→ Should

64/ We missed the train.

→ If only

65/ He'll accept the job unless the salary is too low.

→ If

III/ Conditional in Reported speech

1/ "If I had seen the movie, I'd have told you about it," my brother said to me.

→ My brother told

2/ "I would call you immediately if I needed help," she said to him.

→ She told

3/ "I could understand the French teacher if she spoke more slowly," he said.

→ He said

4/ "If my mother were at home, I would go with you," Lan said to me.

→ Lan told

5/ "If we had left the house earlier, we wouldn't have been so late for the meeting," they said

→ They said

6/ "If I had a lot of money, I'd travel round the world," my father said.

→ My father said

7/ "If I worked overtime, I would earn as much as you," she said to me.

→ She told

8/ "If it hadn't rained, we would have had lunch in the garden," Mary said.

→ Mary said

9/ If it doesn't rain, I will go out for a walk." Jane said to me.

→ Jane told

10/ "If I were five years younger, I would apply for that job". Mary said to me.

→ Mary told

11/ "If I had enough time, I'd have gone to the cinema with you," Martin said to Peter.

→ Martin told

12 "I'll go to the concert with you if it doesn't rain tonight," Lan said to us.

→ Lan told

13/ "If I had money, I would lend you some," I said to her.

→ I told

14/ "I will bake an apple pie if I have enough apples" Mrs. Black said to her daughter.

→ Mrs. Black told

15/ "The accident wouldn't have happened if the driver in front hadn't stopped so suddenly,"

Mr. Brown said.

→ Mr. Brown said

16/ "If I had known you were in hospital, I would have visited you," Martin said to Linda.

→ Martin told

17/ Catherine said, "If I lost my job, I would be in serious trouble."

→ Catherine said

18/ Paul said to us, "If I knew the answer, I'd tell you."

→ Paul told us

19/ Mark said, "If we leave now, we can catch the train."

→ Mark said

20/ Tom said, "If we had booked our flight earlier, it would have been cheaper."

→ Tom said

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

I. Fill in each blank with: *everyone/ everything/ someone/ something/ no one/ nothing/ anyone/ anything*

1/ enjoyed the show. It was a great success.

2/ The police searched the house but found

3/ I can't go to the party. I haven't got to wear.

4/ **Mark:** Were there any calls for me?

Secretary: Yes, rang while you were out. It was rather strange. He refuses to give his name, but he wants to discuss with you.

5/ wants to have their coffee yet.

6/ I looked round the shops, but I didn't buy

7/ Is there interesting in that magazine?

8/ I've got different to tell you.

9/ The doctors are doing possible for your friend.

10/ During the World Cup we saw hardly on the street.

11/ 's mobile phone rang during the performance.

12/ is so expensive these days.

13/ Have you got to say?

14/ I can't see outside.

15/ There's in this envelope. It's empty!

16/ There isn't watching the TV at the moment.

17/ He lost in the fire: his house and all his possessions.

18/ It's a secret. knows about it.

19/ Linda is the only one in the office at the moment. else has gone home.

20/ Could I have to eat?

21/ Would you like to help you?

22/ There's at the front door.

23/ I don't want to do this evening.

24/ A: Shall I make you to eat?

B: Oh, yes, please. I'm really hungry. I've had hardly all day.

25/ She didn't tell about her plans.

26/ The accident looked serious but fortunately was injured.

27/ If has any questions, I'll be pleased to answer them.

28/ I was too surprised to say

29/ Why are you looking under the bed? Have you lost?

30/ This machine is very easy to use. can learn to use it in a very short time.

31/ phoned, did they?

- 32/ came to visit me while I was in hospital.
33/ The exam was extremely difficult. passed.
34/ A: What's in the box?
 B: It's empty.
35/ Don't worry. I won't tell else about it.
36/ The office was empty. had left when I arrived.
37/ I rang the doorbell but was in.
38/ I asked a lot of people but knew the answer.
39/ was having lunch in the restaurant so there was in the office.
40/ phoned you today but she didn't tell me her name.
41/ Did she tell you interesting?
42/ Did see you?
43/ Is there there?
44/ He left without speaking to else.
45/ He is not doing any harm
46/ It's impossible to remember 's name.
47/ has his own view of what happened.
48/ There's under the table.
49/ I want to eat.
50/ Have you got I could read?
51/ There's interesting on the front page.
52/ We can learn from his talk.
53/ There's at the door.
54/ from your office phoned.
55/ If you saw drowning, what would you do?
56/ has lost his or her car keys.
57/ There's interesting in the newspaper.
58/ gives me more pleasure than listening to Mozart.
59/ is more valuable than independence and freedom.
60/ There is as refreshing as lemon tea.
61/ I've had to eat since lunchtime.
62/ There's interesting in the newspaper. It's boring.
63/ came to see me.
64/ When I arrived, there was there.
65/ He found that could speak English.
66/ In my opinion, is more important than family.
67/ There's you can say to make me forgive you. I never want to speak to you again.
68/ There isn't left, the burglars took it all.
69/ There's important I need to tell you, please could we talk privately
70/ There's wrong with you, you're perfectly healthy.

II/ Rewrite these sentences:

- 1/ We didn't see anyone at her house yesterday.
→ We
2/ I didn't say anything.
→ I
3/ She didn't tell anybody about her plans.
→ She
4/ I looked out of the window but I could see no one.
→ I

5/ I don't know anything about economics.

→ I

6/ She doesn't want anything to drink.

→ She

7/ I couldn't make an omelet because there weren't any eggs.

→ I

8/ There wasn't anybody on the bus.

→ There

9/ I haven't got any money. Can you lend me some?

→ I

10/ Sue went to the supermarket but she bought nothing.

→ Sue went to the supermarket but she

11/ I don't like doing anything today.

→ I

12/ My father hasn't eaten anything all day today.

→ My father

13/ He watched nothing on TV last night.

→ He

14/ There was no one in the restaurant when I arrived there.

→ There

15/ I have eaten nothing all day.

→ I

16/ There is nothing in the bottle.

→ There

17/ I didn't write anything last week.

→ I

18/ I know nothing about it.

→ I

ONE/ ONES

1/ Rewrite these sentences in brackets so that the noun is not repeated. Use one or ones

1/ These cups are nice. (Each cup is hand-painted.)

→

2/ I need to fill in a form about my driving test, but (I haven't got a form.)

→

3/ I've watched all these videos. (I must get some new videos.)

→

4/ These photos are good. (Have you seen this photo?)

→ ?

5/ I need a dinner-jacket for the party, so (I've hired a dinner-jacket.)

→

6/ Those shoes are too small. (Can you give me any larger shoes?)

→ ?

7/ This map isn't very good. (The map in the car is better.)

→

8/ I'm having a biscuit. (Would you like a biscuit, too?)

→ ?

9/ I don't like these hats. (I prefer those hats over there.)

→

10/ A: Could you pass me one of those saucepans, please?

B: (Do you need a big saucepan or a small saucepan?)

→

A: (A big saucepan, please.) →

II. Choose the best answer:

1/ We need new curtains. Okay, let's buy green this time.

A. one B. one's C. ones D. ones'

2/ He didn't catch when he went fishing yesterday.

A. anyone B. anything C. nothing D. everything

3/ I don't know why hates me.

A. everyone B. no one C. someone D. everything

4/ No, I don't want, thanks. I'm not hungry.

A. nothing B. anything C. something D. anyone

5/ offered to help. They probably didn't have the time.

A. Nothing B. Someone C. No one D. Anyone

6/ It's too late now. We can't do to help you.

A. everyone B. no one C. anything D. everything

7/ Look at that pumpkin! It's the biggest I've seen this year.

A. ones B. one C. ones' D. none is correct

8/ "I'd like to buy a new bike." ~ "Do you like this"?

A. ones B. one C. ones' D. all are correct

9/ If you remember at all, please let us know.

A. anyone B. anything C. nothing D. everything

10/ It's time for new to take over.

A. everyone B. no one C. someone D. everything

11/ in the capital is now quiet.

A. Everything B. Everyone C. No one D. Anything

12/ Did knock on the door? ~ No, knocked on the door.

A. someone/nothing B. someone/ no one C. everyone/ anyone D. no one/ something

13/ Did either of the solutions work? ~ No, of the solutions worked.

A. something B. everything C. nothing D. anyone

14/ Does here speak English? ~ No, here speaks English.

A. anyone/no one B. anything/ no one C. everyone/ anyone D. no one/ something

15/ Fast food can be bought almost

A. everything B. anyone C. somewhere D. anywhere

BÀI TẬP Củng Cố Kiến Thức HK1

I. Give the correct form of the given words to complete the following sentences.

- Everyone was very _____ when ANNA said that her grandfather had died (**sympathy**)
- The room was _____ decorated with pink and white icing (**beauty**)
- My closest friend is a warm and _____ person (**care**)
- We'd like to offer your school a _____ of two million dong (**donate**)
- We all were in a state of great _____ when we learnt that we had passed the final exam (**excite**)
- Our campaign for _____ eradication was started in 2000 (**literate**)
- She _____ her father as she was growing up (**idol**)

8. Were women _____ allowed to vote before 1945? (**office**)
9. Nowadays more and more people _____ take care of others. (**volunteer**)
10. My brother and his friends spend hours a week helping _____ or handicapped children in the city. (**advantage**)
11. It's a _____ to see Jordan again after such a long time. (**please**)
12. I'd like to express my great _____ to your company for a donation of one million dong (**grateful**)
13. You need to be more _____ if you want to become a novelist. (**imagine**)
14. We consider it an _____ job to help people in our home village (**honor**)
15. The _____ are helped to overcome difficulties by the volunteers. (**able**)
16. What about a small gift to Mary after her _____? (**present**)
17. The _____ of our group scored 20 points at the last question (**represent**)
18. The teacher gave a clear _____ of the rules of the competition (**explain**)
19. My most _____ experience happened a few years ago (**embarrass**)
20. Has any _____ been made about the English competition? (**announce**)
21. We must limit population _____ because of our limited resources (**grow**)
22. We must raise an _____ of the problems of overpopulation (**aware**)
23. You should give _____ proof to support your ideas (**science**)
24. The number of literate females fell _____ between 1998 and 2004 (**drama**)
25. There are more than 50 _____ taking part in the competition (**compete**)
26. It's a chance for me to test my general _____ (**know**)
27. The gap between _____ is bigger and bigger (**generational**)
28. One of the problems we have to deal with is water _____ (**short**)
29. By bringing _____ to other people, you will be happy, too (**happy**)
30. He became internationally _____ for his novel. (**fame**)
31. The concert will raise money for local _____. (**charity**)
32. Thanks for your _____, without we wouldn't have got good marks. (**co-operate**)
33. Only a small _____ of students are interested in politics these days. (**minor**)
34. We are very _____ to our teacher for helping revising for the final exam. (**gratitude**)
35. If you lose interest in the job soon, you are thought to lack _____. (**constant**)
36. We had a very _____ holiday last summer. (**memory**)
37. This magazine only aims at _____ (**teen**)
38. The number of winners is _____ (**limit**)
39. Thanks to medical improvements, the (**die**) _____ rate in Newtown has recently decreased
40. At the end of (**compete**) _____, the judges will announce the total score of each group.

II. Give the correct form of the verb in the bracket.

1. Alice heard Alley (sing) _____ a song when he came into the room.
2. parents rarely let their children (go) _____ out after 9 pm
3. Gagarin was the first human (fly) _____ into space.
4. We will spend two days (visit) _____ Halong Bay, then return to Hanoi.
5. The police made him (open) _____ his luggage.
6. She (not realize) _____ him until he introduced his name.
7. She is busy (shop) _____ for her wedding.
8. last Sunday, when they (watch) _____ an exciting football match on TV, the electricity (go) _____ out
9. by the time I (get) _____ into the town, the shop (close) _____.
10. He (break) _____ his arm when he (play) _____ football.
11. After he (do) _____ his home work he went to bed.
12. When I (see) _____ her on the street yesterday, she (wear) _____ a rosy skirt.

13. He (teach) _____ Maths before he changed to literature.
14. You had better (take) _____ the bus. (go) _____ by train is too expensive.
15. Bob spends a lot of time (write) _____ the essay.
16. I am looking forward to (hear) _____ from you.
17. He did not expect (invite) _____ to the party.
18. The little girl can't stand (make) _____ fun of by her classmates.
19. We (watch) _____ TV when it (start) _____ to rain.
20. The sun (rise) _____ in the east.
21. I object to (go) _____ to the sea in this cold weather.
22. I don't know how (express) _____ our thanks to your kindness.
23. I have some letters (read) _____
24. (Fail) _____ twice, he didn't want to try again.
25. They denied (be) _____ there.
26. If she catches you (read) _____ her dairy, she will be furious.
27. John hoped (appoint) _____ as the head teacher of the school.
28. (Be) _____ honest, I've done this kind of work before.
29. Laura has decided (attend) _____ a cooking course.
30. Ask him (come) _____ in. Don't keep him (stand) _____ at the door.
31. I (not see) _____ the film last night because I (see) _____ it several times before.
32. Mary (not wear) _____ her glasses at that time so she (not see) _____ what color the man's T-shirt (be) _____.
33. The new students hope (include) _____ in many of the school's social activities.
34. (Know) _____ that he was poor; I offered to pay his fare.
35. The doors are too dirty. They need (clean) _____
36. John had agreed (meet) _____ me in his office.
37. It's important for the figures (update) _____ regularly.
38. (your parents/ not/ be) _____ proud if they could see you now?
39. I'll lend you War and Peace if I (finish) _____ it before you go on holiday.
40. If you had worked harder, you (pass) _____ your final exam.
41. The book (publish) _____ last week is his first novel.
42. (photocopy) _____ all the papers, Sarah put them back in the file.
43. I found a coin (lie) _____ on the sidewalk.
44. Our mechanic said that he expects (fix) _____ the brake on the car before we pick it up.
45. We had hoped (finish) _____ the project by the end of the month but we keep (delay) _____ by changes in the plans.
46. Those shirts need (iron) _____, but you don't need (iron) _____ them now.
47. Are we permitted (bring) _____ guests to the ceremony? I'd like (invite) _____ my friend to join us.
48. By the time I (get) _____ back to the bathroom, the bath _____ (overflow).
49. I was just about to leave when I (remember) _____ my briefcase.
50. It's no good (write) _____ to him. He never answers the letters.
51. There was no way of (get) _____ out of the building except by (climb) _____ down a robe and Ann was too terrified (do) _____ this.
52. When we met, Jack avoided (look) _____ at me.

III. Find out 1 mistake in each sentence and correct it.

1. I've been studying French since I've started high school.
2. It took them at least two months learning how to pronounce these words.

3. I decided to change jobs because my boss made me working overtime.
4. Have you heard the news? The President has been shooting!
5. The editor decided not publish the story because the facts were unreliable.
6. The art critic gave the show a poor review, that saddened the exhibition team.
7. When I was sick with the flu, my mother made me to eat soup and rest in bed
8. Having lived here for seven years, my friend is used to speak English with all her classmates.
9. To grow well, a tree must be well-suited to the area where is it planted.
10. There are a lot of work to do here.
11. I couldn't make my car to start this morning.
12. My boss doesn't allow me using the telephone for private calls.
13. I'm sure he is capable in running a mile in four minutes.
14. Good friendship should be basing on mutual understanding.
15. I'm delighted hearing that you have made much progress in your study recently.
16. She said the letter was personal and wouldn't let me to read it.
17. It's impossible for me being there before 8.00p.m.
18. I saw a man to jump through the window 5 minutes ago, but I couldn't remember his face.
19. If I will have to make a difficult decision, I always discuss it with my friends.
20. They wish they are able to spend more time in London.
21. Of my opinion, this book is much better than that one.
22. He should ever call again, please tell him that I am not at home.
23. If you were here yesterday, you would have seen Jean.
24. Unless we work harder, we will finish it on time.
25. You should visit that part of the country when it will be spring.
26. The children wish that they have more free time to play football.
27. John decided buying a new car in the morning, but in the afternoon he changed his mind.
28. He warned us to be careful of strangers and not go out at night.
29. We were advised not drinking the water in the bottle.
30. The teacher told us to keep quietly during the lesson.
31. You'd not better swim too far from the shore.
32. She said that if it does not rain tomorrow, she would go out with you.
33. After driving for twenty miles, he suddenly realized that he has been driving in the wrong direction.
34. If it had not been rained so hard, we would have dined out.
35. It's obviously high time countries all over the world discuss the problem of population explosion.

36. I don't want to go with him. He drives very dangerous.
37. The thief admitted him having stolen more than 100 wallets.
38. Vietnamese women were official allowed to vote in 1945.
39. The number of participants in the competition have increased to 360.
40. John lived in New York since 1960 to 1975, but he is now living in Detroit.

IV. Rewrite sentences.

1. As I don't have a credit card, I find it difficult to book an airline ticket over the phone.
(present participle) →
2. Keith spent a lot of time filling in job application forms because he was unemployed.
(present participle) →
3. The house was built of wood, so it was clearly a fire risk.
(present participle) →
4. She didn't know where the theater was, so she asked for directions at the hotel reception.
(If) →
5. As she was a nurse, she knew what to do after the accident
(present participle) →
6. 'It was nice of you to invite me to your birthday party. Thanks very much.'
→ Mike thanked
'I must have made a mistake in the calculations.'
→ Mr. Forest admitted
7. 'I'll pay for the meal.'
→ Sarah insisted
8. 'Perhaps we can go to Paris for the weekend.'
→ Neil suggested
9. 'I can get you there in good time.'
→ Jim guaranteed
10. 'I'm sorry I couldn't come to visit you last summer.'
→ Kate apologized
11. 'We'll organize the Christmas party.'
→ They promised
12. 'I hear you won the championship. Congratulations!'
→ Dane congratulated
13. 'I wish I'd asked for his name and address.'
→ I regretted
14. 'All right. We will meet the student representatives.'
→ The teachers agreed
15. 'You mustn't drink too much caffeine.'
→ Marta warned
16. I don't ride the bus to school every morning because it's always so crowded.
→ If.....
17. The schoolchildren sowed some seeds, but they forgot to water them so they didn't grow. (If)
→ If.....
18. Stop talking or you won't understand the lesson. (If)
→ If.....

19. The wind is blowing hard, so we won't take the boat out for a ride. (If)
→ If.....
20. Carol didn't answer the phone because she was studying. (If)
→ If.....
21. I feel better now because you talked to me about my problems yesterday. (If)
→ If.....
22. Because I don't have enough free time, I can't help my mother with the housework. (If)
→ If.....
23. Rita is exhausted today because she didn't get any sleep last night. (If)
→ If.....
24. I didn't prepare for today's lesson. So it's difficult for me to understand the teacher's explanation. (If)
→ If.....
25. 'If I had any money, I'd buy you a drink,' she said to me. (reported speech)
→
26. 'If I catch the plane, I'll be home by five,' he said. (reported speech)
→
27. 'You should stay in bed if you feel unwell,' my mother said. (reported speech)
→
28. 'What would you do if you were having a problem with grammar, Jane?' Anne asked. (reported speech)
→
29. 'I'd have been in bad trouble if Jane hadn't helped me,' he said. (reported speech)
→
30. I met her during my stay in Paris last summer. (while)
→
31. Mac Kenzie wrote four best-sellers before he was twenty. (By the age)
→
32. He was crossing the road. I caught sight of him.
→ I noticed
33. Jimmy got into his car and drove away. I saw this.
→ I saw.....
34. They had a good meal and then went to dance.
→ After they

V. Choose the word in each group that has the underlined part pronounced differently from the rest:

- | | | | |
|----------------------|---------------------|-------------------|----------------------|
| 1. A. gossip | B. generous | C. origin | D. gymnastic |
| 2. A. mutual | B. question | C. feature | D. confidential |
| 3. A. <u>change</u> | B. <u>character</u> | C. <u>cheese</u> | D. <u>chilly</u> |
| 4. A. <u>bank</u> | B. <u>against</u> | C. <u>seventh</u> | D. <u>avenue</u> |
| 5. A. <u>noble</u> | B. <u>nose</u> | C. <u>notice</u> | D. <u>novel</u> |
| 6. A. <u>house</u> | B. <u>horse</u> | C. <u>honor</u> | D. <u>hospitable</u> |
| 7. A. <u>what</u> | B. <u>wheel</u> | C. <u>who</u> | D. <u>whale</u> |
| 8. A. <u>debt</u> | B. <u>pub</u> | C. <u>sob</u> | D. <u>object</u> |
| 9. A. <u>beloved</u> | B. <u>helped</u> | C. <u>laughed</u> | D. <u>liked</u> |
| 10. A. <u>tells</u> | B. <u>talks</u> | C. <u>stays</u> | D. <u>steals</u> |

- | | | | |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 11. A. <u>a</u> dvanced | B. <u>a</u> nnual | C. <u>a</u> nnounce | D. <u>a</u> warded |
| 12. A. <u>r</u> esult | B. <u>w</u> eb <u>s</u> ite | C. <u>s</u> pon <u>s</u> or | D. <u>p</u> rac <u>t</u> ise |
| 13. A. <u>b</u> right | B. <u>f</u> ind | C. <u>w</u> in | D. <u>s</u> hine |
| 14. A. <u>w</u> hite | B. <u>w</u> rite | C. <u>w</u> est | D. <u>w</u> ear |
| 15. A. <u>r</u> hythm | B. <u>h</u> our | C. <u>h</u> onest | D. <u>h</u> oliday |
| 16. A. <u>t</u> ime | B. <u>q</u> uest <u>i</u> on | C. <u>t</u> est | D. <u>t</u> rain |
| 17. A. <u>t</u> welve | B. <u>w</u> hen | C. <u>w</u> in | D. <u>a</u> n <u>s</u> wer |
| 18. A. <u>c</u> at | B. <u>c</u> ontest | C. <u>r</u> ec <u>e</u> ive | D. <u>c</u> urr <u>i</u> culum |
| 19. A. <u>w</u> rite | B. <u>w</u> rong | C. <u>w</u> ell | D. <u>w</u> rinkle |
| 20. A. <u>l</u> augh <u>e</u> d | B. <u>c</u> ook <u>e</u> d | C. <u>w</u> atch <u>e</u> d | D. <u>n</u> eed <u>e</u> d |
| 21. A. <u>p</u> lease | B. <u>i</u> ncre <u>a</u> se | C. <u>r</u> each | D. <u>i</u> nste <u>a</u> d |
| 22. A. <u>a</u> vailable | B. <u>l</u> and | C. <u>f</u> am <u>i</u> ly | D. <u>p</u> lan |
| 23. A. <u>d</u> ouble | B. <u>e</u> nough | C. <u>d</u> oubt | D. <u>t</u> ouch |
| 24. A. <u>r</u> aise | B. <u>a</u> n <u>s</u> wer | C. <u>o</u> rganiz <u>a</u> tion | D. <u>r</u> ise |

VI. Choose the best answer

- Two friends should be loyal _____ each other
A. on B. with C. in D. to.
- My father took _____ an interest in collecting stamps. He had a valuable stamp collection
A. on B. up C. in D. over
- he had a bad cough so the doctor advised him to give _____ smoking
A. up B. in C. of D. for
- When the candles were blown _____, the room was in dark.
A. of B. out C. at D. in.
- I often take part _____ social activities every weekend
A. For B. against C. over D. in.
- The teacher divided the class into three groups _____ ten.
A. Of B. with C. in D. for.
- Have you got any difficult _____ learning about these answers?
A. For B. about C. in D. with
- Peter should have apologized _____ being late this morning, but he did not.
A. about B. at C. for D. up
- You can believe him. I do not think he is capable _____ telling lies
A. to B. of C. at D. on
- Would you _____ my opening the windows now?
A. mind B. concern C. worry D. want
- I really like Emma Watson. She had such a good sense of _____.
A. Intelligent. B. humour C. honest D. patience.
- You should _____ more attention to this new type of exercise.
A. Make. B. Take C. pay D. concentrate.
- She quickly _____ at her notes again before entering the examination room.
A. Saw B. glanced C. observed D. watched.
- The child is so _____ that she never lets others touch her toys.
A. Kind B. sneaky C. cruel D. selfish
- I have no _____ to his coming here.
A. Objection B. idea C. protest D. complaint
- The company has all services for the sick and the _____.
A. Age B. aging C. aged D. elder
- It is important to _____ illiteracy out of this world.
A. Delete B. cancel C. eradicate D. damage

18. Are you willing to take _____ in our project?
A. Part B. participation C. role D. contribution
19. I warn you _____ pickpockets in the shopping areas
A. With B. against C. on D. to
20. People are not aware _____ the problem of overpopulation.
A. for B. of C. at D. in
21. Traveling by airplane for the first time was a _____ experience.
A. memorial B. memory C. memorable D. memorized
22. Thanks to medical improvements, the _____ rate in Newtown has recently decreased.
A. dead B. death C. deadly D. deaden
23. According to IFPRI, the world's population is expected to be about 12 billion _____ 2150.
A. on B. by C. of D. at
24. 2000 years B.C is the abbreviation of 2000 years _____.
A. before century B. before Christmas C. before Christ D. before Christian
25. A young adult's choices for a birth control _____ might be different from that of a woman who is older or who is married.
A. technique B. method C. way D. skill
26. I want to congratulate you _____ the contest.
A. to win B. at winning C. on winning D. about winning
27. The teacher tried to explain the new formula _____ his students
A. with B. for C. to D. among
28. The English contest _____ the Student Union is an annual event in my school.
A. by B. organized by C. held D. to held
29. A _____ is a person chosen to speak on behalf of a group.
A. monitor B. representative C. president D. member
30. Motorbike is the most popular means of _____ in Vietnam.
A. transporting B. transport C. transporter D. transported
31. Students from the northern _____ are asked to help their illiterate relatives with writing and reading skills.
A. houses B. highlands C. planet D. global
32. Students must obey class _____.
A. regulations B. laws C. conferences D. times
33. Nigeria has a population _____ nearly 100 million.
A. about B. in C. of D. with
34. _____ how difficult the job was, I mightn't have taken it.
A. If I know B. If I would know C. Did I know D. Had I known
35. Most students find English Competitions _____.
A. enjoying B. enjoyment C. enjoyed D. enjoyable
36. I am pleased to _____ the winner of the final competition. It's Group B.
A. recite B. announce C. explain D. appoint
37. My teachers always encourage _____ hard at school
A. to work B. us to work C. working D. that we work
38. Six months after the accident, he still has difficulty _____.
A. to walk B. walking C. walked D. to walking
39. The President expressed his deep sorrow over the bombing deaths.
A. sadness B. anxiety C. disappointment D. interest
40. The children seem to be totally capable _____ working by themselves.
A. on B. of C. in D. for
41. Your friendship should be based on _____ trust.

A. basic B. fragile C. mutual D. blind

42 I had a glance at the article, but I haven't read it yet.

A. close look B. quick look C. direct look D. furtive look

43 The anniversary of the founding of the charity falls _____ 12th November.

A. in B. on C. at D. to

44 They give care and comfort _____ disadvantaged children.

A. for B. to C. on D. at

45 All the teachers work on an entirely _____ basis.

A. volunteer B. volunteered C. voluntary D. voluntarily

VII. Rewrite these sentences using an if construction.

1. I didn't see the signal, so I didn't stop.

.....

2. I didn't know your number, so I didn't ring.

.....

3. She didn't know you were in hospital, so she didn't visit you.

.....

4. We only came by bus because there were no taxis.

.....

5. She didn't speak to him, possible because she was so shy.

.....

6. Landlord: She threatened to set fire to her flat; that's the only reason I asked her to leave.

.....

7. We didn't visit the museum because we hadn't time.

.....

8. I only came up the stairs because the lift wasn't working.

.....

9. We didn't listen carefully; perhaps that's why we made this mistake.

.....

10. We got a lift, so we reached the station in time.

.....

11. You washed it in boiling water; that's why it shrank.

.....

12. We missed the train because we were using an out-of-date timetable.

.....

13. His own men deserted him; that's the only reason why he failed.

.....

14. They were driving very quickly. That's why the accident was so terrible.

.....

15. It was raining. That's the only reason I didn't take the children to the beach.

.....

16. When I bought this house I didn't realize that in summer planes skimmed the roof every five minutes. (*If I (knew) I (not buy) etc.*)

.....

17. Tom's father was on the Board. That's the only reason he got the job.

.....

18. He wasn't looking where he was going. That's why he was run over.

.....

19. I don't like country life, perhaps because I wasn't brought up in the country.

.....

20. I didn't know he was so quarrelsome. I'm sorry now that I invited him.

Change these sentences into reported Speech.

1. He said to her: "What would you do if you were my friend?"

2. Johnny said to his mother: "If I study this lesson, I'll know how to do this exercise".

3. My friend said "I'm going to leave if the weather is fine tomorrow"?

4. "If I had a car, I would drive you to the station" said the man to me.

5. John said: "If I have time, I'll finish studying my lesson"

6. "If he gives her a pen, she'll thank for him", said I.

7. Lan said "If you had got up early, you wouldn't have been late for your class."

8. Jane said to me: "I will bring back to you some souvenirs if I visit Paris."

Rewrite the following sentences using Gerund phrases:

1. A good way of keeping fit is to swim everyday.

2. It takes a long time to learn a foreign language.

3. Clean the machine more often that will solve your problems

4. Grow your own food . It's less expensive

5. Give up smoking . I will make you feel better

6. It is cheaper to go by rail than by air

7. You are not allowed to smoke here.

8. It's not very pleasant to be in hospital

9.It's very difficult to wind surf properly.

10.It's more difficult to speak a foreign language than to read it.

11.It is forbidden to walk on the grass.

12.One thing I can't do is swim on my back

13.It's difficult to be polite to someone you don't like.

14.It's not easy to change money here on a Saturday

15.It is impossible to park your car during office hours.

THE 2nd SEMESTER
RELATIVE CLAUSES (Mệnh đề quan hệ)

I. CÁC ĐẠI TỪ QUAN HỆ:

1. WHO:

- làm chủ từ trong mệnh đề quan hệ
- thay thế cho danh từ chỉ người
- N (person) + **WHO** + V + O

2. WHOM:

- làm túc từ cho động từ trong mệnh đề quan hệ
- thay thế cho danh từ chỉ người
-N (person) + **WHOM** + S + V

3. WHICH:

- làm chủ từ hoặc túc từ trong mệnh đề quan hệ
- thay thế cho danh từ chỉ vật
-N (thing) + **WHICH** + V + O
-N (thing) + **WHICH** + S + V

4. THAT:

- có thể thay thế cho vị trí của who, whom, which trong mệnh đề quan hệ xác định

*** Các trường hợp thường dùng “that”:**

- khi đi sau các hình thức so sánh nhất
- khi đi sau các từ: only, the first, the last
- khi danh từ đi trước bao gồm cả người và vật
- khi đi sau các đại từ bất định, đại từ phủ định, đại từ chỉ số lượng: *no one, nobody, nothing, anyone, anything, anybody, someone, something, somebody, all, some, any, little, none.*

Ex: He was the most interesting person **that** I have ever met.

It was the first time **that** I heard of it.

These books are all **that** my sister left me.

She talked about the people and places **that** she had visited.

*** Các trường hợp không dùng that:**

- trong mệnh đề quan hệ không xác định
- sau giới từ

5. WHOSE: dùng để chỉ sở hữu cho danh từ chỉ người hoặc vật, thường thay cho các từ: *her, his, their*, hoặc hình thức 's

.....N (person, thing) + **WHOSE** + N + V

6. WHY: mở đầu cho mệnh đề quan hệ chỉ lý do, thường thay cho cụm *for the reason, for that reason.*

.....N (reason) + **WHY** + S + V ...

Ex: I don't know the reason. You didn't go to school for that reason.

→ I don't know the reason **why** you didn't go to school.

7. WHERE: thay thế từ chỉ nơi chốn, thường thay cho **there**

....N (place) + **WHERE** + S + V

(**WHERE** = **ON / IN / AT** + **WHICH**)

Ex: a/ The hotel wasn't very clean. We stayed at that hotel.

→ The hotel **where** we stayed wasn't very clean.

→ The hotel **at which** we stayed wasn't very clean.

8. WHEN: thay thế từ chỉ thời gian, thường thay cho từ **then**

....N (time) + **WHEN** + S + V ...

(**WHEN** = **ON / IN / AT** + **WHICH**)

Ex: Do you still remember the day? We first met on that day.

→ Do you still remember the day **when** we first met?

→ Do you still remember the day **on which** we first met?

I don't know the time. She will come back then.

→ I don't know the time **when** she will come back.

II. CÁC LOẠI MỆNH ĐỀ QUAN HỆ:

1. Mệnh đề quan hệ xác định (Defining relative clause): Được sử dụng khi danh từ là danh từ không xác định.

Ex: The city **which I visited last summer** is very beautiful.

(*Defining relative clause*)

2. Mệnh đề quan hệ không hạn định (Non-defining relative clause): Được sử dụng khi danh từ là danh từ xác định.

Ex: Dalat, **which I visited last summer**, is very beautiful.

(*Non-defining relative clause*)

Note: để biết khi nào dùng mệnh đề quan hệ không xác định, ta lưu ý các điểm sau:

- Khi danh từ mà nó bổ nghĩa là một **danh từ riêng**
- Khi danh từ mà nó bổ nghĩa là một **tính từ sở hữu** (my, his, her, their)
- Khi danh từ mà nó bổ nghĩa là một danh từ đi với **this, that, these, those**

III. MỘT SỐ LƯU Ý TRONG MỆNH ĐỀ QUAN HỆ:

1. Nếu trong mệnh đề quan hệ có **giới từ** thì giới từ có thể đặt trước hoặc sau mệnh đề quan hệ (chỉ áp dụng với **whom** và **which**.)

Ex: Mr. Brown is a nice teacher. We studied with him last year.

→ Mr. Brown, **with whom** we studied last year, is a nice teacher.

→ Mr. Brown, **whom** we studied **with** last year, is a nice teacher.

2. Có thể dùng **which** thay cho cả mệnh đề đứng trước.

Ex: She can't come to my birthday party. That makes me sad.

→ She can't come to my birthday party, **which** makes me sad.

3. Ở vị trí túc từ, *whom* có thể được thay bằng *who*.

Ex: I'd like to talk to the man **whom** / **who** I met at your birthday party.

IV. CÁCH RÚT GỌN MỆNH ĐỀ QUAN HỆ:

1. Mệnh đề quan hệ được rút thành cụm phân từ:

Mệnh đề quan hệ chứa các đại từ quan hệ làm chủ từ *who*, *which*, *that* có thể được rút gọn thành cụm hiện tại phân từ (V-ing) hoặc quá khứ phân từ (V3/ed).

* Nếu mệnh đề quan hệ là mệnh đề **chủ động** thì rút thành cụm **hiện tại phân từ (V-ing)**.

Ex: a/ The man who is standing over there is my father.

→ The man

b/ The couple who live next door to me are professors.

→ The couple

* Nếu mệnh đề quan hệ là mệnh đề **bị động** thì rút thành cụm **quá khứ phân từ (V3/ed)**.

Ex: a/ The instructions that are given on the front page are very important.

→ The instructions

b/ The book which was bought by my mother is interesting.

→ The book

2. Mệnh đề quan hệ được rút thành cụm động từ nguyên mẫu:

Mệnh đề quan hệ được rút thành cụm động từ nguyên mẫu (**To-infinitive**) khi trước đại từ quan hệ có các cụm từ: ***the first, the second, the last, the only hoặc hình thức so sánh bậc nhất.***

Ex: a/ John was the last person that got the news.

→ John was the last person

b/ He was the best player that got the prize.

→ He was the best played

c/ He was the best player that we admire.

→ He was the best player

I/ Choose the best answer:

1/ The man you saw this morning is from Manchester.

A. which B. whom C. whose D. All are correct

2/ Mr Smith is the landlord we rent the house.

A. from who B. whom C. from which D. from whom

3/ I think his best poems are his early

A. ones B. one C. ones' D. none is correct

4/ I don't like these pictures. I like those

A. ones B. one C. ones' D. B & C are correct

5/ My neighbour, about you are talking, is a famous doctor.

A. whose B. that C. whom D. which

6/ Mr. Clark, son you often go to class with, is a good doctor.

A. whose B. whom C. who D. his

7/ I don't like people tell jokes all the time.

A. who B. whom C. which D. whose

8/ The people with he works like him very much.

- A. who B. whom C. whose D. which
- 9/ Have you seen the film is on TV to night?
A. what B. whose C. that D. who
- 10/ The footballer took drugs has been banned from playing again.
A. whose B. whom C. which D. who
- 11/ The people used to live in that house have moved.
A. who B. whom C. whose D. which
- 12/ Jack has three brothers, all of are married.
A. who B. whom C. that D. whose
- 13/ The scientist discovered a new planet has won the Nobel prize.
A. who B. whom C. which D. whose
- 14/ They've captured all the animals escaped from the zoo.
A. who B. which C. where D. whom
- 15/ Mary is looking after a dog leg was broken in an accident.
A. where B. which C. whose D. who
- 16/ The person knows all about it is the secretary.
A. who B. whom C. which D. whose
- 17/ My sister, Joan, is a bit deaf, didn't hear the phone.
A. that B. whom C. which D. who
- 18/ My new flat, is on the tenth floor, has a terrific view.
A. where B. that C. which D. who
- 19/ Sarah can't remember the name of the shop from she bought the sofa.
A. who B. whom C. which D. whose
- 20/ I'd like to see the photo
A. took B. you took it C. that you took D. that you took it
- 21/ Someone bicycle had been stolen was reporting it to the policeman.
A. where B. whom C. which D. whose
- 22/ The plane crashed was twenty-five years old.
A. who B. whom C. which D. where
- 23/ Have you seen the book I was reading?
A. which B. that C. Ø D. All are correct
- 24/ Jake, lives next door to Melanie, is rather strange.
A. who B. whom C. which D. that
- 25/ Martin is someone with I usually agree.
A. who B. whom C. which D. that
- 26/ Do you remember the day we moved the piano upstairs?
A. when B. that C. where D. A & B are correct
- 27/ We passed the shops windows were decorated for Christmas.
A. whose B. that C. when D. which
- 28/ We enjoyed Mexico City we spent our vacation.
A. where B. which C. in which D. A & C are correct
- 29/ Oxford, attracts many tourists, is often crowded in the summer.
A. where B. which C. in which D. A & B are correct
- 30/ The man I saw at the concert is Lan's boss.
A. which B. whose C. P D. when
- 31/ Sydney is Australia's largest city has a population of more than three million.
A. where B. which C. when D. who
- 32/ Maria, has only been in Britain for a few weeks, speaks excellent English.
A. that B. whom C. who D. whose

- 33/ We're going on holiday in September the weather isn't so hot.
A. when B. where C. which D. whom
- 34/ Mr. Mason apologized for the mistake to we complained.
A. when B. that C. where D. which
- 35/ This is the place the accident happened.
A. when B. where C. which D. that

II/ Fill in each blank with: who, whom, which, that or whose

- 1/ Do you know the woman is coming towards us?
- 2/ The people are waiting for the bus in the rain are getting wet.
- 3/ I come from a city is located in the southern part of the country.
- 4/ The children attend that school receive a good education.
- 5/ The fence surrounds our house is made of wood.
- 6/ The scientists are searching the causes of cancer are making progress.
- 7/ They live in a house was built in 1890.
- 8/ We have an apartment overlooks the park.
- 9/ Dr. Stanton, is the president of the university, will give a speech at the commencement ceremonies.
- 10/ The man is sitting on the bench is Mr. Clark.
- 11/ Could you show me the path leads to the church?
- 12/ Some weapons are found at a flat in Bristol belong to the IRA.
- 13/ People are dumb use sign language as a means of communication.
- 14/ My office, is on the second floor of the building, is very small.
- 15/ Alan, car had broken down, was in a very bad mood.
- 16/ Do you know anyone speaks French or Italian?
- 17/ Jane works for a company makes shoes.
- 18/ The sun, is one of millions of stars in the universe, provides us with heat and light.
- 19/ Do you remember the last woman was taken on the ambulance?
- 20/ Do you know the building windows are painted green?
- 21/ The woman you talked to yesterday is a pianist.
- 22/ The bridge was broken last month has now been repaired.
- 23/ Read the passage to I referred in my talk .
- 24/ His best film, won several awards, was about the life of Gandhi.
- 25/ His new car, for he paid 50000 francs, has already had to be repaired.
- 26/ My wife, is out at the moment, will phone you when she gets back.
- 27/ Mr Smith, has a lot of teaching experience, will join us in the spring.
- 28/ Mary, we were talking about earlier, has just walked in.
- 29/ This is the man house we have just passed.
- 30/ This is the house owner is very rich.
- 31/ What was the name of the girl you phoned last night?
- 32/ The office we visited two weeks ago was Mr. Pike's.
- 33/ John, speaks French and Italian, works as a tourist guide.
- 34/ The town we visited two weeks ago was famous for its beauty spots.
- 35/ We stayed at the hotel Tom recommended to us.
- 36/ I met a boy mother used to work in a circus.
- 37/ I met a man owns a restaurant.
- 38/ What is the title of the novel you are reading?
- 39/ Mr. Lam, I introduced to you, is my English teacher.
- 40/ David's house, is opposite to mine, is going to be sold.
- 41/ We were grateful to Mr. Pike, car we had travelled home in.

- 42/ An orphan is a child parents are dead.
43/ A plumber is a person job is to fit and repair water pipes.
44/ Most of the forests once covered Britain have now been destroyed.
45/ My friend Miriam, mother is Indonesian, has gone to live in Jakarta.

**III/ Join these sentences, using relative pronouns/ adverbs: *who, whom, whose, which, where, ...*
Put comma(s) where necessary.**

- 1/ We stayed at the Grand Hotel. Ann recommended it to us.
→
2/ John is one of my closest friends. I have known him for a very long time.
→
3/ Sheila is away from home a lot. Her job involves a lot of travelling.
→
4/ We often go to visit our friends in Bristol. It is only 30 miles away.
→
5/ There are several restaurants. They do Sunday lunches.
→
6/ Alan and Jackie explained their absence to the teacher. They did not come to class yesterday.
→
7/ The house is unoccupied. Its windows are broken.
→
8/ These are the girls. My sister teaches them.
→
9/ The woman gave me a lift. She is my aunt's friend.
→
10/ The man is Sue's cousin. I introduced you to that man.
→
11/ My sister wasn't feeling very hungry. She didn't want to go to the restaurant.
→
12/ That boy is my neighbour's son. He has just won a gold medal.
→
13/ The scientist has won the Nobel prize. He discovered a new planet.
→
14/ They've captured all the animals. These animals escaped from the zoo.
→
15/ Ann had been sleeping in the back of the car. She felt quite fresh and wanted to go on.
→
16/ We visited the old castle. It was really interesting.
→
17/ Mary is looking after a dog. Its leg was broken in an accident.
→
18/ Lady Astor was the first woman. She took her seat in Parliament.
→
19/ Sarah works in advertising. You met her yesterday.
→
20/ I'll introduce you to the man. His support is necessary for your project.
→
21/ A man answered the phone. He said Tom was out.
→
22/ I was given this address by a man. I met him on a train.

-
- 23/ My brother Jim lives in London. He is a doctor.
-
- 24/ Mary said that there should be a notice up warning people. Mary's children couldn't swim.
-
- 25/ Alexander Bell was the man. He invented the telephone.
-
- 26/ A pensioner is a person. He / She no longer works and gets money from the state.
-
- 27/ Jane is my best friend. You talked to her yesterday.
-
- 28/ Ann bought the dress. The dress doesn't fit her very much.
-
- 29/ Have you found the keys? You lost the keys.
-
- 30/ I met a boy. His mother writes detective stories.
-
- 31/ The plane has just taken off. It is an hour late.
-
- 32/ The new stadium will be opened next month. It can hold 90,000 people.
-
- 33/ The woman was injured in the accident. She was taken to hospital.
-
- 34/ Nam is the person. His mother is a professor.
-
- 35/ This morning I met Jane. I hadn't seen her for ages.
-
- 36/ We decided not to swim in the lake. The lake looked rather dirty.
-
- 37/ Mr. Nam called the police. His wallet was stolen.
-
- 38/ I don't know the girl. She's just gone into the hall.
-
- 39/ I never forget the park. We met each other for the first time at this park.
-
- 40/ I like the woman. I met her at the party last night.
-
- 41/ I have to call the man. I accidentally picked up his umbrella after the meeting.
-
- 42/ Do you remember Mrs. Lan? She taught us English composition.
-
- 43/ Algebra problems contains letters. They stand for unknown numbers.
-
- 44/ The city is beautiful. We spent our holiday in that city.
-
- 45/ My younger sister has just got married. You met her at my house last week.
-
- 46/ Mr. Brown is the man. I am responsible to him for my work.
-

47/ The taxi driver was friendly. He took me to the airport.

→

48/ Florida is the Sunshine State. It attracts many tourists every year.

→

49/ Do you see my pen? I've just written the lesson with it.

→

50/ Her latest novel is really good. I read it on holiday.

→

51/ I have three brothers. All of them are businessmen.

→

52/ How is your son? He had an operation last night.

→

53/ I had to drive to the factory to pick up my brother. His car wouldn't start.

→

54/ I was sitting on a chair. It suddenly collapsed.

→

55/ She showed me a photograph of her son. Her son is a police officer.

→

56/ The airport is the most modern one. We are going to arrive at this airport.

→

57/ Mr. Edward has gone into hospital for some tests. His health hasn't been good recently.

→

58/ My sister has two children. Their names are Ali and Talal.

→

59/ The teacher thanked the students. They had given her some flowers.

→

60/ A river is polluted. It is not safe for swimming.

→

61/ The man is very pleased and proud. His daughter won the science contest.

→

62/ Tom got into the car. The car was parked behind the house.

→

63/ The villagers had received a warning of the impending flood. They escaped to safety.

→

64/ Rice is grown in many countries. It is a staple food throughout much of the world.

→

65/ The man was very kind. I talked to him yesterday.

→

66/ She's is the woman. Her briefcase was stolen.

→

67/ The man is very nice. He sold me the car.

→

68/ Sarah works in advertising. You met her yesterday.

→

69/ The old church was really interesting. We visited it.

→

70/ The picture is being shown in an exhibition. Laura painted the picture.

→

71/ Which is the European country? Its economy is growing the fastest.

-?
- 72/ The man repaired my car. He is a real expert.
→
- 73/ I'm afraid the numbers didn't win the prize. I chose the numbers.
→
- 74/ People often suffer from backache. Their work involves standing for most of the day.
→
- 75/ A widower is a man. His wife has died and who has not re-married.
→
- 76/ My friend Miriam has gone to live in Jakarta. His mother is Indonesian.
→
- 77/ The machine cost over a million pounds. I have to use the machine in my job.
→
- 78/ Mont Blanc is between France and Italy. It is the highest mountain in the Alps.
→
- 79/ The 1992 Olympics were held in Barcelona. It is the north-east of Spain.
→
- 80/ Darwin's ideas changed our view of the world. He travelled to a lot of countries when he was young.
→

IV/ Combine these sentences using: WHERE / WHEN / WHY

- 1/ That's the hotel. I've often stayed in it.
→
- 2/ That's the chair. I sat on it.
→
- 3/ I don't know the reason. Mary wanted to meet the bank manager for that reason.
→
- 4/ I recently went back to the town. I was born there.
→
- 5/ Do you know a restaurant? We want to have a really good meal there.
→
- 6/ I can't remember the name of the garage. We had the car repaired there.
→
- 7/ Do you know the name of the hotel? John is staying there.
→
- 8/ The city was beautiful. We spent our vacation there.
→
- 9/ The town is small. I grew up there.
→
- 10/ That is the drawer. I keep my jewellery there.
→
- 11/ Monday is the day. We will come then.
→
- 12/ 7: 05 is the time. My plane arrives at that time.
→
- 13/ 1960 is the year. The revolution took place then.
→
- 14/ July is the month. The weather is usually the hottest then.
→

15/ Do you know the date? We have to submit the first essay on that date.

→

V. Combine these sentences using: Preposition + whom/ which

1/ The people are very funny. I work with these people.

→ The people with

2/ That is the place. My school is situated in that place.

→ That is the place in

3/ This is the result of our work. I'm pleased with it.

→ This is the result of our work with

4/ The man is standing over there. I told you about him yesterday.

→ The man about

5/ Was that the restaurant? You normally go to that restaurant.

→ Was that the restaurant to?

6/ The valley is heavily polluted. The town lies in the valley.

→ The valley in

7/ The woman comes from Poland. He is engaged to her.

→ The woman to

8/ Have you sent thank-you notes to your relatives? You received gifts from them for Christmas.

→?

9/ Do you know the building? Your uncle works in that building.

→

10/ The children are learning grammar. You spoke to them.

→

VI. REDUCED RELATIVE CLAUSES

1/ The children who attend that school receive a good education.

→ The children

2/ The man who is sitting on the bench is Mr. Clark.

→ The man

3/ The man who is talking to John is from Korea.

→ The man

4/ Nam was the first boy who won the gold medal.

→ Nam was the first boy

5/ Do you remember the last woman who was taken on the ambulance?

→ Do you remember the last woman?

6/ Some weapons which were found at a flat in Bristol belong to the IRA.

→

7/ The people who live next door helped us to move the furniture.

→

8/ There are delays this morning for people who are travelling to work.

→

9/ New Zealand was the first country which gave women the vote.

→

10/ Families who were living in an empty office building have been evicted.

→

11/ David was the only person who offered his help.

→

12/ The bridge which was built only two years ago has been declared unsafe.

→

13/ People who are protesting against pollution have marched to London.

-
- 14/ Mrs. Harper was the first woman who became the Managing Director.
-
- 15/ The chemical company which employed 4,000 people has gone bankrupt.
-
- 16/ The secretary were the only people who got a pay rise.
-
- 17/ Baseball is a game which is played mainly in the US.
-
- 18/ A competitor is someone who take part in a competition.
-
- 19/ The men who are talking to the policemen caused an accident.
-
- 20/ A new drug which was developed at a British university may give us eternal youth.
-
- 21/ English has an alphabet that consists of 26 letters.
-
- 22/ Anyone who wants to come with us is welcome.
-
- 23/ They live in the house which is built many years ago.
-
- 24/ He comes from a city that is located in the Northern part of the country.
-
- 25/ Did you get the message which concerned the special meeting?
-
- 26/ The rules that allow public access to wilderness areas need to be reconsidered.
-
- 27/ The photographs which were published in the newspaper were extraordinary.
-
- 28/ The sunlight that comes through the window wakes me up early every morning.
-
- 29/ Two-third of those who were arrested for car theft are under twenty years od age.
-
- 30/ The Indians who lived in Peru before the discovery of the New World by Europeans belonged to the Incan culture.
-
- 31/ Here are some accounts that you must check.
-
- 32/ The last student who was interviewed was John.
-
- 33/ The man who is meeting me for lunch is from Taiwan.
-
- 34/ I pulled off the sheets which covered the furniture.
-
- 35/ Police took away Mr. Black and items which belonged to him.
-
- 36/ The man who is driving the bus is my brother.
-
- 37/ The last prisoners who were released were all women.

-
- 38/ The weapon that was used in the murder has now been found.
-
- 39/ The people who were driving past waved to us.
-
- 40/ The steps which lead down to the river are dangerous.
-
- 41/ She is the first woman who reached the top of this mountain.
-
- 42/ The second person who received that scholarship was John.
-
- 43/ He was the last man who got out of the car.
-
- 44/ The decisions which were made at today's meeting will affect all of us.
-
- 45/ The last decision which was made at today's meeting will affect all of us.
-
- 46/ The book that was published last week is his first written for children.
-
- 47/ The boys who were chosen for the team were under 9.
-
- 48/ Olivia's daughter is the youngest girl who swam a length of the pool.
-
- 49/ The film which starts at 8 p.m. is a drama which is based on a true story.
-
- 50/ He was the third person who was killed by terrorists.
-
- 51/ The victims who were injured in the accident were taken to the hospital.
-
- 52/ The message which is sent today may reach them tomorrow.
-
- 53/ Customers who complain about the service should see the manager.
-
- 54/ I really don't know the first man that traveled around the world.
-
- 55/ She was the fourth woman who finished the race.
-
- 56/ The paperback books which are on my desk are about James Bond.
-
- 57/ The committee which proposed an increase in the minimum wage had stiff opposition.
-
- 58/ The glasses that lay on the floor belonged to the senator.
-
- 59/ Senior citizens who keep active tend to live longer, happier lives.
-
- 60/ Politicians who are running for office are having to make changes in order to appeal to today's youth.
-

CLEFT SENTENCES (Câu chẻ)

Câu chẻ được dùng để nhấn mạnh một thành phần của câu như chủ ngữ, túc từ hay trạng từ

1. Nhấn mạnh chủ từ (Subject focus)

a. It + is / was + Noun / pronoun (person) + who + V + O ...

Ex: My brother collected these foreign stamps.

→ It was my brother who collected these foreign stamps.

b. It + is / was + Noun (thing) + that + V + O ...

Ex: Her absence at the party made me sad.

→ It was her absence at the party that made me sad.

2. Nhấn mạnh túc từ (Object focus)

a. It + is / was + Noun / pronoun (person) + who(m) + S + V ...

Ex: I met Daisy on the way to school.

→ It was Daisy who(m) I met on the way to school.

Note: Khi nhấn mạnh túc từ ta có thể dùng who thay cho whom nhưng khi nhấn mạnh chủ từ thì không dùng whom thay cho who.

b. It + is / was + Noun (thing) + that + S + V ...

Ex: My brother bought an old motorbike from our neighbor.

→ It was an old motorbike that my brother bought from our neighbor.

3. Nhấn mạnh trạng từ (Adverbial focus)

It + is / was + Adverbial phrase + that + S + V ...

Ex: - We first met in December.

→ It was in December that we first met.

- Phan Thanh Gian was born in this village.

→ It was in this village that Phan Thanh Gian was born.

4. Câu chẻ bị động (Cleft sentences in the passive)

a. It + is / was + Noun / pronoun (person) + who + be + P.P...

Ex: Fans gave that singer a lot of flowers.

→ It was that singer who was given a lot of flowers.

b. It + is / was + Noun (thing) + that + be + P.P...

Ex: People talk about this film.

→ It is this film that is talked about.

- Fans gave that singer a lot of flowers.

→ It was a lot of flowers that were given to that singer.

Exercise 1. Rewrite the sentences to focus attention on the underlined information. Using structure "it is / was ... that"

1. She bought the car from Tom.

2. My secretary sent the bill to Mr. Harding yesterday.

3. We are coming to stay with Jane this weekend.

4. The president makes the important decisions.

5. I'm looking forward to physics exam.

6. I lost my wallet somewhere in there.

7. I was born and grew up **in the village.**
.....
8. **My teacher** helped me a lot of with my study last semester.
.....
9. The headmaster gave **Tam** a bicycle as a scholarship.
.....
10. **Your carelessness** caused the accident
.....
11. He only turned professional **last year.**
.....
12. We are coming to stay with **Jane** this weekend.
.....
13. I'm most worried about **the statistics exam.**
.....
14. I saw him in the street **only last week.**
.....
15. I first got to know **the girls** five years ago.
.....
16. **The players** won the World Cup in 1996.
.....
17. **Peter** lent us money.
.....
18. **The smoke from the factory chimneys** pollutes the air.
.....
19. **Princess Diana** was usually refered as the Rose of England.
.....
20. The event of Mary Celeste took place **in 1982.**
.....

Exercise 2: Cleft sentence in the passive

1. Fred gave **Mary** the money.
.....
2. The agent sold **Mr. and Mrs., Hanson** the house.
.....
3. We gave **Martha** a birthday present yesterday.
.....
4. The boy threw **his friend** the baseball.
.....
5. Tom handed **Peter** the books and the envelopes.
.....
6. We sent **the teacher** the package yesterday.
.....
7. The teacher told **the students** an interesting story.
.....
8. I showed **my friends** all of the photographs.
.....
9. You are going to write **George** a letter soon.
.....
10. You are going to show **the people** your drawing tonight.
.....

CLEFT SENTENCES

- 1/ My sister is the cleverest in the family.
→ It was my sister
- 2/ I started school in 1986.
→ It was in 1986
- 3/ My mother cooked the meal.
→ It was the meal
- 4/ Angkor was considered one of the largest cities in the world in the 13th century.
→ It was in the 13th century
- 5/ French archeologists began to excavate Angkor in the early 1860s.
→ It was French
- 6/ John wanted to see Helen.
→ It was Helen
- 7/ Tom gave Mary a diamond ring.
→ It was Mary that was.....
- 8/ My brother painted this picture last week.
→ It was this picture that was
- 9/ Tom had a lot of work to do.
→ It was Tom
- 10/ Henry's friend lent him some money.
→ It was Henry's friend
10. The man gave her the book. →
11. The boy visited his uncle last month.
→
12. I and she sang together at the party.
→
13. Nam's father got angry with him.
→
14. The boys played football all day long.
→
15. The girl received a letter from her friend yesterday.
→
16. His presence at the meeting frightened the children.
→
17. My mother bought me a present on my birthday party.
→
18. The neighbor told them about it.
→
19. My friend came to see me late last night.
→
20. That boy scored the goal for his team.
→

CONJUNCTIONS (Liên từ)

Các liên từ cặp đôi như both ... and, not only ... but also, either ... or, neither ... nor được dùng để cấu tạo cấu trúc song hành. Từ, cụm từ hay mệnh đề được nối liền bởi những liên từ này luôn có cùng cấu trúc, chức năng hoặc từ loại.

1. both ... and (vừa ...vừa ..., cả ...lẫn ...)

Ex: She is *both* intelligent *and* beautiful. (adjectives)

Both his brother *and* his sister are students. (nouns)

Note: Khi hai chủ từ được nối liền bởi both ... and, động từ ở hình thức số nhiều.

2. not only ... but also (không những / chỉ ... mà còn)

Ex: He studies *not only* English *but also* French. (nouns)

The film was *not only* boring *but also* long. (adjectives)

She *not only* sings beautifully *but also* plays the piano well.

3. either ...or (hoặc ...hoặc)

Ex: You *either* must work hard *or* will fail. (verbs)

Either you *or* he is going to be on duty. (pronouns)

4. neither ... nor (không ... cũng không)

Ex: She likes *neither* tea *nor* coffee. (nouns)

My father *neither* smokes *nor* drinks. (verbs)

Note:

- Khi hai chủ từ được nối bởi not only ... but also, either ... or, neither ... nor, động từ hòa hợp với chủ từ ngay trước nó.

Ex: Not only his friends but also his brother gives him presents.

- Khi not only ... but also nối liền hai mệnh đề và đứng đầu câu, chúng ta phải đảo ngữ mệnh đề thứ nhất.

Ex: Not only *does he speak* English but he also speaks French.

- Động từ trong câu có cặp liên từ neither ... nor luôn ở dạng khẳng định

Ex: My father *neither smokes nor drinks*.

EXERCISE 1: BOTH ... AND/ NOT ONLY ... BUT ALSO/ NEITHER ... NOR/ EITHER ... OR

1/ Mr Black was watching TV at 8 last night. Mrs Black was also watching TV at 8 last night.

→ Both

2/ Sue has gone to the cinema or she has gone to a concert.

→ Sue has gone to either

3/ The front door was locked and the back door was locked, too.

→ Both

4/ He couldn't speak after the accident. He couldn't walk after the accident, either.

→ He could neither

5/ He is famous in Italy and he is also famous in Switzerland.

→ He is famous not only

6/ Clark practises law and he also teaches it.

→ Clark not only

7/ Tom Tryon is a playwright. He is an actor, too.

→ Tom is both

8/ Alan doesn't want to go skiing this weekend. Carol doesn't want to go skiing this weekend.

→ Neither

9/ Jack has the information you need or Alice has the information you need.

→ Either Jack

10/ I like French cooking. My sister likes French cooking, too.

→ Both

- 11/ Many people don't drink coffee. Many people don't drink alcohol. (USE *neither ... nor*)
→
- 12/ She can sing. She can dance. (USE *both ... and*)
→
- 13/ My parents don't agree with my decision. My brother doesn't agree with my decision, too.
→ Neither
- 14/ The teacher doesn't know the answer. The students don't know the answer.
→ Neither
- 15/ You can go to England by plane or you can go by ship if you prefer. (USE *either ... or*)
→ You
- 16/ I don't know Chinese. My brother doesn't know Chinese, either.
→ Neither my brother
- 17/ The teacher is in the laboratory. The students are in the laboratory.
→ Both
- 18/ I'll take chemistry or I'll take physics next quarter. (USE *either or*)
→
- 19/ This book isn't interesting. It isn't accurate, either. (USE *neither nor*)
→ This book
- 20/ Wheat is grown in Kansas. Corn is grown in Kansas, too.
→ Both
- 21/ My sister is studying math. She is studying chemistry, too. (USE *not only but also*)
→
- 22/ The student is here. The tutor is here. (*both ... and*)
→
- 23/ John has your book or Mary has your book.
→ Either
- 24/ They don't have a fridge for their new department. They don't have a stove for their new department.
(USE *neither nor*)
→
- 25/ Arthur is not in class today. Ricardo is not in class today. (USE *neither nor*)
→
- 26/ I enjoy reading novels. I enjoy reading magazines. (USE *not only but also*)
→
- 27/ Mary came to the meeting. So did James.
→ Both
- 28/ When I refused to help her, she became very angry. She shouted at me, too. (USE *not only ... but also*)
→
- 29/ He buys used cars. He sells used cars, too.
→ He both
- 30/ They can go swimming or they can play tennis this weekend. (USE *either or*)
→
- 31/ We didn't fix dinner for them here. We didn't take them to a restaurant. (USE *neither..... nor*)
→
- 32/ You aren't quite awake today. I am not quite awake today, either. (USE *neither nor*)
→
- 33/ I haven't got a car, and I haven't got a bike. (*neither ... nor*)
→
- 34/ This product is cheap, and it's effective. (*both ... and*)

-
- 35/ Margaret wasn't there. Neither was John.
→ Neither
- 36/ They didn't have food. They didn't have money. (*neither ... nor*)
→
- 37/ The engineer couldn't detect the problem. His colleagues couldn't, either.
→ Neither
- 38/ We clapped our hands and stomped our feet.
→ We both
- 39/ The movie was good, and so was the play.
→ Not only
- 40/ The movie is being shown at The Fox Theater. It is being shown in neighborhood theaters.
(*both ... and*)
→
- 41/ Studying English is enjoyable. Studying English is helpful. (*both ... and*)
→
- 42/ Exercising is good. Eating healthy food is good. (*not only ... but also*)
→
- 43/ I haven't met my girlfriend's father. I haven't met her mother. (*neither ... nor*)
→
- 44/ We can buy him a T- shirt or we can buy him a pair of shoes. (*Either or*)
→
- 45/ He spent all his money. He even borrowed some from me. (*not only but also*)
→
- 46/ He is a great swimmer. He was also a great musician. (*not only but also*)
→
- 47/ He has a sense of humor. He also has intelligence. (*not only but also*)
→
- 48/ He didn't mention the flooding. He didn't mention the landslide, either. (*neither ... nor*)
→
- 49/ She doesn't speak Spanish. She doesn't speak French, either. (*neither ... nor*)
→
- 50/ She's sociable. She's sensitive, too. (*both ... and*)
→
- 51/ We can pay in cash or we can pay by cheque. (*either...or*)
→
- 52/ Jim never reads newspapers. He doesn't read magazines. (*neither...nor*)
→
- 53/ My sandwich has cheese. My sandwich has ham. (*both...and*)
→
- 54/ Sophie's father isn't alive. Sophie's mother isn't alive. (*neither...nor*)
→
- 55/ Jennifer is from Colorado state. So is Peter. (*both ... and*)
→

Exercise 2:

1. Not only John but also his two brothers ____ football as their recreation every weekend.
A. play B. plays C. were playing D. has play
2. Now women work both before ____ after having their children.
A. or B. also C. nor D. and

3. Neither the TV nor the video sets ____ properly.
A. works B. work C. has worked D. is working
4. The most common ____ activities in my country are home based.
A. test B. leisure C. practice D. freedom
5. His recreations include golf, football and shooting.
A. sports B. activities C. pastimes D. pleasures
6. In Britain, the most common leisure activities are home-based.
A. regular B. popular C. standard D. distinctive
5. Neither she nor I _____ responsible for that. It isn't our duty.
A. are B. is C. am D. have
7. It is ____ that can speak 6 languages in our office.
A. he B. him C. his D. her
8. My parents want me _____ to study _____ to behave well.
A. either/or B. neither/nor C. either/both D. not only/but also
9. It is the event ____ a lot.
A. has been talked about B. that has been talked bout
C. Has talked about D. that has talked bout
10. She ____ hard but also gets on well with her classmates.
A. doesn't only study B. studies not only
C. not only studies D. not studies only
11. The hotel is neither spacious _____.
A. or comfortable B. nor comfortable C. or comfort D. nor comfort
12. Both Son and Vinh like English. _____ of them likes literature.
A. None B. Neither C. Either D. Both

COULD / BE ABLE TO

1. COULD: là dạng quá khứ của can, dùng diễn tả:

- khả năng (phổ quát, chung chung) trong quá khứ

Ex: When I was six, I **could** drive a bike.

- lời yêu cầu lịch sự

Ex: **Could** you show me the way to the post office?

- điều gì đó có thể xảy ra ở hiện tại hoặc tương lai nhưng không chắc chắn

Ex: It **could** rain this afternoon. (Có thể chiều nay trời sẽ mưa.)

2. BE ABLE TO: có hình thức quá khứ là was / were able to + V1, diễn tả sự cố gắng hoàn tất một hành động trong một tình huống đặc biệt.

Ex: The fire spread through the building quickly but we all **were able to** escape.

The player hurt in his leg, but he **was able to** play to the end.

Exercise 1: Could or be able to, using a negative if necessary

Ex: We were able to finish the football match before it started snowing too heavy.

Sue looked all over the house, but couldn't find her keys anywhere.

1. Suddenly all the lights went out. We see a thing.
2. The computer went wrong, but luckily Emma..... put it right again.
3. There was a big party last night. You hear the music half a mile away.
4. People heard warning about the flood, and they move out in time.
5. Mrs. Carterput out the fire before the house burnt down.
6. I looked everywhere for the book, but I find it.
7. The planetake off at eleven o'clock after the fog had lifted.
8. I knew John had been smoking. I smell cigarettes when I came into the room.

9. The air was so polluted in the city center, I hardly breathe.
10. "Do you want a game?" "Sorry, Iplay chess."

TAG QUESTIONS (Câu hỏi đuôi)

Câu hỏi đuôi gồm có hai phần: câu nói (statement) và phần đuôi (tag)

statement, tag?

1. Quy tắc chung:

- Câu nói và phần đuôi luôn ở dạng đối nhau

**câu nói khẳng định, đuôi phủ định?
câu nói phủ định, đuôi khẳng định?**

Ex: The children are playing in the yard, **aren't they?**

They can't swim, **can they?**

- Chủ từ của câu nói là đại từ, ta lặp lại đại từ này

Ex: She is a doctor, **isn't she?**

- Chủ từ là danh từ, ta dùng đại từ tương ứng thay thế

Ex: People speak English all over the world, **don't they?**

- Đại từ bất định nothing, everything: được thay bằng **"it"**

Ex: Everything is ready, **isn't it?**

- Các đại từ no one, nobody, someone, somebody, everyone, everybody, anyone, anybody: được thay bằng **"they"**

Ex: Someone called me last night, **didn't they?**

- Đại từ this / that được thay bằng **"it"**; these / those được thay bằng **"they"**

Ex: That is his car, **isn't it?**

These are your new shoes, **aren't they?**

- "There" trong cấu trúc "there + be" được dùng lại ở phần đuôi

Ex: There aren't any students in the classroom, **are there?**

- Câu nói có trợ động từ (will / can / shall / should / is / are ...): trợ động từ được lặp lại ở phần đuôi

Ex: You will come early, **won't you?**

- Câu nói không có trợ động từ: trợ động từ do / does / did được dùng ở phần đuôi

Ex: It rained yesterday, **didn't it?**

She works in a restaurant, **doesn't she?**

- Câu nói có chứa các từ phủ định thì phần đuôi khẳng định.

Ex: He never comes late, **does he?**

Note: Động từ trong phần đuôi ở phủ định thì luôn được viết ở dạng rút gọn.

2. Một số trường hợp đặc biệt:

- Phần đuôi của **I AM** là **AREN'T I**

Ex: I am writing a letter, **aren't I?**

- Phần đuôi của **Let's** là **SHALL WE**

Ex: Let's go out tonight, **shall we?**

- Câu mệnh lệnh khẳng định:

+ dùng phần đuôi **WON'T YOU** để diễn tả lời mời

+ dùng phần đuôi **WILL / WOULD / CAN / CAN'T YOU** để diễn tả lời yêu cầu lịch sự

Ex: Have a piece of cake, **won't you?**

Close the door, **will you?**

- Câu mệnh lệnh phủ định: dùng phần đuôi **WILL YOU** để diễn tả lời yêu cầu lịch sự

Ex: Please don't smoke her, will you?

- Phần đuôi của **ought to** là **SHOULDN'T**

Ex: She ought to do exercise every morning, **shouldn't she?**

TAG QUESTIONS

☞ Add suitable question tags:

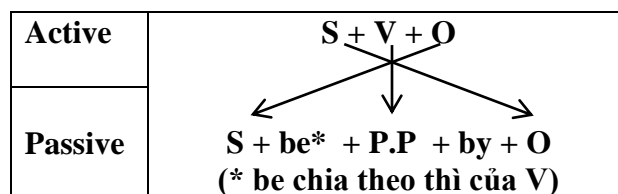
- 1/ You don't know where Peter lives,?
- 2/ It's cold today,?
- 3/ Let's listen to some music,?
- 4/ Nothing is wrong,?
- 5/ Somebody told you,?
- 6/ There won't be any problems,?
- 7/ No one phoned for me,?
- 8/ Robert isn't at work today,?
- 9/ We have got enough money,?
- 10/ You'd like to have something to eat,?
- 11/ Lynne speaks French and German,?
- 12/ Everyone will be here soon,?
- 13/ There's plenty of time,?
- 14/ You aren't listening to me,?
- 15/ You saw the film,?
- 16/ Nobody was watching the TV,?
- 17/ Nothing terrible has happened,?
- 18/ The telephone hasn't been repaired,?
- 19/ Don't forget to lock the door,?
- 20/ You live in an apartment,?
- 21/ Sally turned in her report,?
- 22/ You've never met Jack Freeman,?
- 23/ You have a ticket to the game,?
- 24/ Tom knows Alice Reed,?
- 25/ These books aren't yours,?
- 26/ We should call Rita,?
- 27/ That house is your uncle's,?
- 28/ This is yours,?
- 29/ Jane has been here since July,?
- 30/ Ostriches can't swim,?
- 31/ You haven't seen Linda today,?
- 32/ She's got beautiful eyes,?
- 33/ Mary won't be late,?
- 34/ There was a lot of traffic,?
- 35/ Susan plays the piano,?
- 36/ Tom doesn't look well today,?
- 37/ Open the door,?
- 38/ Don't be late,?
- 39/ Ann's applied for the job,?
- 40/ I'm too impatient,?
- 41/ Jack's on holiday,?
- 42/ Let's go out tonight,?
- 43/ He'd never met her before,?

- 44/ This isn't very interesting,?
- 45/ I'm not late,?
- 46/ There are a lot of people here,?
- 47/ Tom suggested going to the cinema,?
- 48/ Mike is going abroad next month,?
- 49/ Nobody told you about that,?
- 50/ My car isn't very reliable,?
- 51/ Everyone had gone home by the time you got there,?
- 52/ Nothing is cheap nowadays,?
- 53/ You speak German,?
- 54/ These flowers are nice,?
- 55/ Sally went to university,?
- 56/ Martin looks tired,?
- 57/ Tom will be here soon,?
- 58/ Ann lives near you,?
- 59/ No one knows his telephone number,?
- 60/ You have a copy of this week's magazine,?
- 61/ Sally turned in her report,?
- 62/ This grammar is easy,?
- 63/ No one died in the accident,?
- 64/ You've never been to Italy,?
- 65/ You live in an apartment,?
- 66/ That's Bob's,?
- 67/ Linda didn't come to the meeting,?
- 68/ Ron works as a civil engineer for the railroad company,?
- 69/ Mexico is eight hundred miles from here,?
- 70/ Jack has a ticket to the game,?
- 71/ I don't think Tom know Alice Reed,?
- 72/ Let's go for a picnic,?
- 73/ The students spent a relaxing weekend in a small village in the mountain,?
- 74/ I haven't seen you for weeks,?
- 75/ Susan grew up in Florida,?
- 76/ Most of the students did well on their tests,?
- 77/ There won't be any problems,?
- 78/ Jack phoned me,?
- 79/ You had to walk home from work yesterday,?
- 80/ Linda speaks French and German,?
- 81/ Nobody was watching TV,?
- 82/ Let's go out for a meal tonight,?
- 83/ You haven't got a stamp,?
- 84/ He had gone out when you arrived,?
- 85/ You aren't listening to me,?
- 86/ Nothing is wrong,?
- 87/ You haven't seen my keys,?
- 88/ She is collecting stickers,?
- 89/ You have cleaned your bike,?
- 90/ John and Max don't like Maths,?
- 91/ Peter played handball yesterday,?
- 92/ They are going home from school,?

- 93/ Mary didn't do her homework last Monday,?
 94/ He could have bought a new car,?
 95/ I'm clever,?
 96/ Peter works in the shop,?
 97/ They took it,?
 98/ That's the shop where you used to work,?
 99/ Your uncle has never been out of the village,?
 100/ Mum isn't in trouble,?
 101/ You're in a desert in the middle of Australia?
 102/ It's a bit early,?
 103/ She won't have left work before six,?
 104/ You and Martin have the same birthday,?
 105/ They rarely eat in restaurants,?
 106/ George Washington was the first President of the United States,?
 107/ Someone called me last night,?
 108/ Nothing went wrong with him,?
 109/ Nobody complained about the noise,?
 110/ Everybody realized the danger,?
 111/ The lift isn't working today,?
 112/ Elephants live in Europe,?
 113/ Mary goes to school,?

PASSIVE SENTENCES (Câu bị động)

1. Cách chuyển từ câu chủ động sang câu bị động:



Ex: They are painting the house.

→ The house *is being painted*.

They had destroyed all the documents when we arrived.

→ All the documents *had been destroyed* when we arrived.

2. Thay đổi hình thức động từ cụ thể trong từng thì:

TENSES	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
Simple Present	S + V1-s/es	S + am / is / are + PP
Present continuous	S + am / is / are + V-ing	S + am / is / are + being + PP
Simple Past	S + V-ed / V ₂	S + was / were + PP
Past continuous	S + was / were + V-ing	S + was / were + being + PP
Present Perfect	S + have / has + PP	S + have / has + been + PP

Past Perfect	S + had + PP	S + had + been + PP
Simple Future	S + will + V₁	S + will + be + PP
Modal verbs	can may must S + have to + V₁ should used to be going to	can may must S + have to + be + V₃ should used to be going to
Verbs of perception	see hear S + watch + O + V₁ make let	seen heard S + be + watched + to – inf. made let
Causative form	S + have + O (người) + V₁ + O (vật) S + get + O (người) + to-inf + O (vật)	S + have / get + O (vật) + V₃ (+ by + O (người))

*** Verbs of reporting: (động từ chỉ ý kiến: say, think, know, report, believe...)**

- Active

People (they) + say (said) + that	S₂	V₂	O₂
--	----------------------	----------------------	----------------------

- Passive:

1	It + is / was + said + that	S₂	V₂	O₂
2	S₂ am/ is/ are + said was/ were không còn that	to-inf. to have + V₃	O₂	

EXERCISES

I. Change the following sentences into the passive voice.

1. They grow rice in tropical countries.

→ _____

2. Mr. Green loves his children very much.

→ _____

3. People don't speak French here.

→ _____

4. Someone broke his windows last night.

→ _____

5. The police didn't find the lost boy yesterday.

→ _____

6. About thirty million people are watching this live show now.

→ _____

7. They were carrying the injured player off the field at that time.

- _____
8. Jack has typed the article recently.
- _____
9. The police haven't found the murderer yet.
- _____
10. They were carrying the injured player off the field at that time.
- _____
11. They had wrapped the package carefully before they posted it.
- _____
12. Children should treat old men with respect.
- _____
13. The computer can do all the accounts.
- _____
14. They are going to build a new school.
- _____
15. He isn't going to buy that house.
- _____
16. They will pull down that building
- _____
17. The teacher won't correct the exercises tomorrow.
- _____
18. You have to keep dangerous chemicals in the safe place.
- _____
19. Police had to break the meeting up.
- _____
20. She used to pull my hat over my eyes.
- _____
21. They may use that room for the classroom.
- _____
22. You must wash your hands.
- _____
23. They ought to knock down the old building.
- _____
24. You needn't type that report today.
- _____
25. Nobody has used this room for ages.
- _____
26. No one can solve that problem.
- _____
27. No one told us the news.
- _____
28. Paul didn't tell me the ending of the story.
- _____
29. The teacher will give her a prize if she works well.
- _____
30. Her mother bought her a doll last week.
- _____
31. The police found the robber in the forest yesterday.
- _____

32. They made him work all day.

→ _____

33. People don't make the children work hard.

→ _____

34. They let him meet her family last month.

→ _____

35. He won't let you do that silly thing again.

→ _____

36. People saw him steal your car.

→ _____

37. I have heard her sing this song several times.

→ _____

38. The teacher is watching them work.

→ _____

39. Alice had a mechanic repair her car.

→ _____

40. Ellen got Marvin to type her paper.

→ _____

41. The hairdresser is cutting Mary's hair now.

→ Mary is having her hair _____

→ Mary is having the hairdresser _____

42. People know that English is an international language.

→ It is known _____

→ English is known _____

43. They said that she won the competition.

→ _____

→ _____

44. They reported that the President had suffered a heart attack.

→ _____

→ _____

It is said that...../ People say that.....

a. It is said that.....

1. It is said that Concord is the fastest passenger plane in the world.

Concord is said

2. It is said that Huan was the first prize winner in a lottery.

Huan

3. It is said that Everest is the highest mountain in the world.

Everest.....

4. It is said that Paris is much more expensive than Madrid.

Paris.....

5. It is said that Huan passed an entrance examination.

Huan.....

6. It is acknowledged that they were defeated.

They.....

7. It is considered that he has the finest tenor voice.

He.....

8. It is known that he is a good teacher.

He

9. It is believed that he is insane.

He
10. It is thought that he is one of the richest men in Europe.

He.....
b. People say that.....

1. People used to believe that the world was flat.
The world.....

2. People claim that he is innocent.
He.....

3. People estimated that his income was about \$8000 a year.
His income.....

4. People felt that the plan was unwise.
The plan.....

5. People find that he is dishonest.
He.....

6. People reported that the government lost control of the country.
The government.....

7. People understand that you need a change.
You.....

8. People believed that a settlement is possible.
A settlement.....

9. People consider that Frank was badly treated.
Frank.....

10. People say that he is an honest hard-working man.
He.....

MULTIPLE CHOICE

1. These T-shirts and jeans in the US. in 1900.
A. have made B. made C. were made D. make
2. The building is very dangerous. It down next week.
A. knocked B. will knock C. will be knocked D. was knocked
3. The room looks nice. It
A. was cleaning B. has just been cleaned C. will be cleaned D. is cleaning
4. We each other for 10 years.
A. know B. knew C. have known D. had known
5. Our twenty houses when the fire engine
A. had burnt up / arrived B. burnt up / had arrived
C. had been burnt up / arrived D. will have burnt / arrives
6. After I the grass, it to rain.
A. have watered / will begin B. water / began
C. had watered / began D. had watered / will have begun
7. Next week when there a full moon, the ocean tides will be higher.
A. is being B. is C. will be D. will have been
8. English is all over the world.
A. spoken B. speak C. speaks D. to speak
9. Where will these coconut trees?
A. be planted B. planted C. plant D. be planting
10. Before Jane won the lottery, she any kind of contest.
A. hasn't entered B. doesn't enter C. wasn't entering D. hadn't entered
11. My parents tomorrow to stay with me for a few days.
A. come B. will have come C. are coming D. came

12. She left home in 1993 and since then.
A. hasn't seen B. didn't see C. hasn't been seen D. wasn't seen
13. your house painted last year?
A. Had B. Did C. Was D. Have
14. What you at 8 o'clock last night?
A. did/ do B. have/ done C. were/ doing D. had/ done
15. - "We are having a party at the weekend." - "Great! Who?"
A. will being invited B. Is going to invite
C. is going to be invited D. will invite
16. This is the fifth time you the same question.
A. ask B. asked C. are asking D. have asked
17. This church was said in the 19th century.
A. to build B. to be built C. to have been built D. being built
18. In England, the academic year into three terms. Each term by a one-week break.
A. is divided / separated B. divided / is separated
C. is divided / is separated D. divided / separated
19. Gold in California in the 19th century.
A. was discovered B. was discover C. has been discovered D. they discovered
20. I am going to have my car
A. service B. to be serviced C. serviced D. servicing
21. Two tablets twice a day *to* have *you* recover from the illness quickly.
A. must take B. must be taken C. must have taken D. must be taking
22. The next meeting in May.
A. will hold B. will be held C. will be holding D. will have held

PASSIVE VOICE

IT IS SAID THAT.../ PEOPLE SAY THAT

- 1/ People believe that the thieves got in through the kitchen window.
→
→
- 2/ They report that many people are homeless after the flood.
→
→
- 3/ People think that the prisoners escaped by climbing over a wall.
→
→
- 4/ People say that the man drove through the town at 90 miles an hour.
→
→
- 5/ It is reported that the building has been badly damaged by fire.
→
- 6/ People say that the company is losing a lot of money.
→
→
- 7/ People believed that the company lost a lot of money last year.
→
→
- 8/ It is thought that the company will lose a lot of money this year.
→ The company

9/ People think that someone started the fire deliberately.

→

10/ People expect that taxes will be reduced soon.

→ Taxes

11/ People think that he acted very foolishly.

→

→

12/ People believed that the Emperor was a god.

→

→

13/ They rumour that the company is in difficulties.

→

→

14/ People reported that the fighting had just begun.

→

→

15/ They estimate that 200 people were killed by the pollution.

→

→

16/ They show that poverty is increasing.

→

17/ People believe that he will win.

→

→

18/ People say that he beats his wife.

→

→

19/ People thought that he had died in the battle.

→

→

20/ People believe that he was killed by terrorists.

→

→

21/ People know that he is armed.

→

→

22/ We believe that he has special knowledge which may be useful to the police.

→

→

23/ We know that you were in town on the night of the crime.

→

→

24/ People think that he has been living in America for twenty years.

→

→ He

25/ People thought that the fire had started at eight.

→

→

26/ People think that an apple a day is good for you.

→ An apple

27/ People think that the driver had both legs broken in the crash.

→

→

- 28/ People believed that the explosion had been caused by a mine.
→
→
- 29/ People know that the Prime Minister has bought a holiday home.
→
→
- 30/ People believed that the earth was flat.
→
→
- 31/ It is reported that the damage is extensive.
→ The damage
- 32/ It is alleged that the man was driving at 110 miles an hour.
→ The man
- 33/ It is expected that the weather will be good tomorrow.
→ The weather
- 34/ They declared that she won the competition.
→ She
- 35/ It is said that this orchestra is the best in the world.
→ This orchestra
- 36/ She is expected to break the world record.
→ It
- 37/ He is known to have several foreign bank accounts.
→ People
- 38/ They are reported to have financial problems.
→ It
- 39/ People say that this corner is an accident black spot.
→ This corner
- 40/ The police assume that the arrested man has robbed the bank.
→ It

BÀI TẬP Củng cố KIẾN THỨC HK2

I. VERB TENSES

- 1) The weather (be, often) very warm in spring.
- 2) If I (have)..... time, I (help) you. But I'm so busy.
- 3) This new shop (open)2 months ago.
- 4) They (travel) many new places up to now.
- 5) Peter (not, see)a movie at the moment.
- 6) Why (you, phone)me last night?
- 7) When he (phone).....me last night, I (play)games on the Internet.
- 8) Whenever I (have).....free time, I (like)reading.
- 9) If I (know).....the truth, I (tell)you, but I didn't know it.
- 10) They told me (not, lose)my confidence.
- 11) These letters (send).....tomorrow.
- 12) The students (just, finish)their last course.
- 13) When I (come) there last month, David (already, leave)
- 14) Mary wishes she (be).....at home right now.
- 15) The instructions (explain)by Professor Johnson helped us know more about the danger of energy pollution.
- 16) It often takes her half an hour (do).....morning exercises every day.
- 17) If I (be).....you, I (behave, not)like that.
- 18) This car (produce)in Japan.
- 19) I suddenly remembered that I (forget) my key.
- 20) Who (drive)..... the car at the time of the accident?
- 21) The boy (play) games on internet learns very badly.
- 22) By the time Sheila (get) back, Chris (go) home.
- 23) David (eat)..... Japanese food before, so he (know).....what to order.
- 24) If they had waited, they (find)me.
- 25) If the children (be)good, they can have each a ticket for the theatre.
- 26) I (buy) that coat if it were not so dear.
- 27) I'm sure she will do well if she (go) to the university.
- 28) Whatyou (do) when I (come) to your office?
- 29) When Diana (watch) her favorite TV programme, there (be) a power cut.
- 30) It (be) often hot in the summer.
- 31) Last night, before she (watch) TV, she (do) her homework.
- 32) When I (arrived) at this house, he was still sleeping

II. Rewrite the following sentences as directed.

1. The city suffers from air pollution. The city suffers from water pollution. (*use both... and*)
✎ The city suffers _____ water pollution.
2. My parents misunderstood my intentions. (*use cleft sentence in passive*)
✎ It _____ by my parents.
3. The couple who live in the house next door are both college professors. (*reduce relative pronoun*)
✎ The couple _____ college professors.
4. John doesn't play tennis. David doesn't play tennis, either. (*Use "neither ... nor ..."*)
✎ John _____ tennis.
5. Peter bought these cars in Japan. (*Use cleft sentence*)
✎ It _____ in Japan.
6. He was the first man who left the burning building. (*use an infinitive phrase*)

- ✂ He _____ the burning building.
7. We think he was the richest man in town. (*change into special passive voice*)
✂ He _____ in town.
8. Nam has got no money or no car. (*use tag question*)
✂ Nam has _____, _____ he?
9. Ann has got both new jeans and new shoes. (*use not only...but also...*)
✂ Ann has got _____ new shoes.
10. They didn't want to come with us at first but we managed to persuade them. (*use be able to*)
✂ They didn't want to come with us at first but _____.
11. I talked to a woman. Her car had broken down on the way to the party. (*use relative clause*)
✂ I _____ on the way to the party.
12. I bought the book from that corner shop. (*cleft sentence*)
✂ It _____ the book.
13. Both singers had bad voices. (*Neither*)
✂ Neither _____ voices.
14. Nobody came to the office last Sunday. (*tag question*)
✂ Nobody _____, _____ they?
15. The examination lasted 2 days. I was successful in this exam. (*use pre+ relative pro.*)
✂ The examination _____ two days.
16. We stood on the bridge which connects the two halves of the building. (*reduce*)
✂ We _____ the two halves of the building.
17. The fifth man who was interviewed was completely unsuitable. (*reduce*)
✂ The fifth man _____ unsuitable.
18. Vietnamese people celebrate Tet as the greatest occasion in a year. (*cleft sentence in passive*)
✂ It _____ by Vietnamese people.
19. It is thought that he drives dangerously. (*change into special passive voice*)
✂ He _____ dangerously.
20. Nam is not only a bus driver but also a postman. (*use both...and...*)
✂ Nam is _____ a postman.
21. My secretary sent the bill to Mr. Brown yesterday morning. (*Cleft sentence in the passive*)
✂ It _____ the bill by my secretary yesterday morning.
22. The man told me to oil the car. I bought the car from him. (*use pre. +relative pronoun*)
✂ The man _____ told me to oil the car.
23. She is the only woman who was appointed to the board. (*Reducing the relative clause*)
✂ She _____ to the board.
24. She was the last person that got the news. (*Reduce clause into phrase*)
✂ She _____ the news.
25. Richard and John didn't keep her secret. (*Neither.....nor*)
✂ Neither _____ her secret.
26. His brother broke his glasses. (*Cleft sentence in the passive*)
✂ It _____ by his brother.
27. People believe that Great Wall was built in 1368. (*special passive voice*)
✂ The Great Wall _____ in 1368.
28. You can play football or you can go swimming. It's up to you. (*either ... or*)

☞ You can _____ swimming.

29. I met Arthur Jones. His books on sports are best-sellers. (*combining using relative clauses*)

☞ I met _____ best-sellers.

30. Ann doesn't go out at mid night, does she? (*use tag question*)

☞ Ann never _____, _____ she?

III. PHONETICS: Choose the word whose underlined part pronounced differently from that of the others.

- | | | | |
|--------------------------|---------------------|------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. A. parks <u>u</u> | B. animals <u>u</u> | C. planets <u>u</u> | D. environments <u>u</u> |
| 2. A. itche <u>d</u> | B. change <u>d</u> | C. forme <u>d</u> | D. viewe <u>d</u> |
| 3. A. mile <u>s</u> | B. word <u>s</u> | C. accid <u>en</u> ts | D. tensio <u>n</u> s |
| 4. A. admire <u>d</u> | B. like <u>d</u> | C. place <u>d</u> | D. watche <u>d</u> |
| 5. A. cough <u>s</u> | B. laugh <u>s</u> | C. photograph <u>s</u> | D. weigh <u>s</u> |
| 6. A. admire <u>d</u> | B. look <u>e</u> d | C. misse <u>d</u> | D. hope <u>d</u> |
| 7. A. adm <u>i</u> re | B. e <u>v</u> ent | C. vari <u>e</u> ty | D. wh <u>i</u> le |
| 8. A. undert <u>a</u> ke | B. gre <u>a</u> t | C. pastime | D. spectat <u>o</u> r |
| 9. A. measu <u>r</u> e | B. instea <u>d</u> | C. featur <u>e</u> | D. alrea <u>d</u> y |

Choose the word that is stressed on the different position from that of the others.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|
| 10. A. beautiful | B. successful | C. guitarist | D. accomplish |
| 11. A. survival | B. pollution | C. government | D. material |
| 12. A. successful | B. collector | C. relative | D. accomplish |
| 13. A. knowledge | B. friendship | C. athlete | D. event |
| 14. A. envelope | B. album | C. usually | D. accompany |
| 15. A. admire | B. extinct | C. hobby | D. collect |

IV. RELATIVE CLAUSE: Fill in the blank with one suitable word:

1. The doctor saved my life is very enthusiastic. (who, whom, which, whose).
2. The meeting we attended this morning was so funny. (who, whom, which, whose)
3. I have just met a girl father used to be my teacher. (who, whom, which, whose)
4. Do you know the village she visited 2 days ago? (where, when, which, whose)
5. Do you know the villageshe was born? (where, when, which, whose)
6. The manager you met yesterday is my boss. (who, whom, which, whose)
7. They have told me the news made me so sad. (who, whom, which, whose)
8. I bought a new shirt style is very modern. (who, whom, which, whose)
9. She has just visited the townyou told about last month. (where, when, which, whose)

V. TAG QUESTIONS

1. The train is arriving on time, _____?
2. Kevin spent all his money yesterday, _____?
3. He had hardly left the office when the telephone rang, _____?
4. Max'd better stay here for a week, _____?
5. Nothing was damaged during the storm, _____?
6. Mrs. Black doesn't believe her son is able to draw such a picture, _____?
7. He comes late sometimes, _____?
8. He failed to do anything last weekend, _____?
9. The Smiths hardly ever go on travel, _____?
10. Jack and Jill went up the hill, _____?
11. There are seven days in a week, _____?

PRACTICAL TESTS

TEST 1

I. Choose the underlined word that has a different sound from the other.

1. A. village B. dangerous C. gossip D. passenger
2. A. which B. changeable C. each D. characteristics
3. A. sponsored B. played C. competed D. learned

II. Choose the word that has a different stress pattern from the other.

4. A. loyalty B. constancy C. quality D. enthusiasm
5. A. apartment B. floppy C. memorable D. childish

III. Fill in the blank with a suitable preposition.

6. Although they have encountered many obstacles, they have always been loyal _____ their love.
7. My sister seems to be acquainted _____ her new work.
8. He glanced _____ his watch and hurried to the bus-stop.
9. The American couple complained _____ the high cost of visiting Europe.
10. He is incapable _____ calculating.

IV. Fill in the blank with a suitable form of the words in brackets.

11. Did you have any lasting _____ while you were at college? (friend)
12. He's _____ changing his mind. (constancy)
13. His work is full of _____ mistakes. (care)
14. The children are being cared for by a _____. (relate)
15. All she needed to complete her _____ was a baby. (happy)

V. Give the correct form of the verbs in the brackets

16. We (watch) TV when there (be) a power cut.
17. It's easy (ride) a bicycle.
18. He (be) out of work since he (graduate) from the university.
19. I am looking forward to (see) you a gain.
20. What (you, do) at this time yesterday?
21. He always (get) up late in winter.
22. Look! The bus (come)
23. The secretary (type) 10 letters before the lunchtime yesterday.
24. They are whispering to avoid (hear) by their friends.
25. She was so thirsty that she (drink) all the milk.
26. Jame wanted (change) my mind.
27. The exam is coming, so the teachers make their students (work) a lot.

VI. Transformation

28. My mother let me go to Lan's birthday party alone.
→ My mother allowed
29. He reviewed his lessons. Then he went out for a walk.
→ After he
30. I haven't eaten this kind of food before.
→ This is the first
31. It is necessary to learn English vocabulary everyday.

- Learning
32. The phone rang during dinner.
→ While I
33. "Don't make so much noise," he said.
→ He told me
34. The film star wore dark glasses so that no one would recognize him.
→ The film star avoided

VII. Choose one suitable word to fill in the blank.

AN EMBARRASING INCIDENT

One day last summer I was walking through the local park. It was a hot day and I was eating an ice cream. As I was walking past the boating lake, I saw my friends, Carol and Jim. They were taking their dog for a (35) _____. When we met, we stop for a chat. While we were talking, the dog suddenly jumped up and (36) _____ to get my ice cream. I pulled my hand away and unfortunately the ice cream came out of the cone. Now there was a bald man behind me. The (37) _____ man wasn't doing any harm. He was just sitting on a (38) _____ reading a newspaper. Well, when I pulled my hand away, the ice cream flew through the air and it landed (39) _____ the man's head. I didn't know (40) _____ to laugh or cry, but Carol and Jim did. When I looked them, they weren't just laughing, they were in hysterics. But I was terribly embarrassed.

- | | | | |
|----------------|------------|-----------|------------|
| 35. A. trip | B. journey | C. walk | D. voyage |
| 36. A. decided | B. tried | C. wished | D. hoped |
| 37. A. happy | B. lucky | C. poor | D. funny |
| 38. A. chair | B. sofa | C. bench | D. bed |
| 39. A. on | B. in | C. over | D. beside |
| 40. A. how | B. what | C. if | D. whether |

TEST 2

MULTIPLE CHOICE: Write the answers on the ANSWER SHEET

I. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from the others:

- | | | | |
|-----------------------|--------------------|-------------------|---------------------|
| 1. A. grab <u>s</u> | B. step <u>s</u> | C. want <u>s</u> | D. look <u>s</u> |
| 2. A. stoppe <u>d</u> | B. watche <u>d</u> | C. neede <u>d</u> | D. laugh <u>e</u> d |

II. Choose the best answer:

3. I don't like that man. He has a _____ behavior.
A. sneak B. sneaky C. sneakily D. sneaking
4. She smiled to hide her slight _____.
A. embarrass B. embarrassing C. embarrassed D. embarrassment
5. The first quality of true friendship is _____.
A. unselfish B. unselfishness C. selfishness D. selfish

III. Read the passage and choose one correct answer for each question:

After spending a day at the beach, I stopped to buy some food on my way home. But when I reached for my wallet, it wasn't there. I checked my other pockets, the car and then headed back to the beach. My driver's license and my ID card disappeared. My mind was racing through all the things I had lost and I felt rotten. A search of the beach and the parking lot proved fruitless, so I headed home. I tried to forget it because there was nothing I could do, but I was mad at myself for losing it. After dinner when I

was watching TV, the phone rang and a voice asked: "Did you lose a wallet? I found it on the beach." What a great feeling that gave me – not only for my luck, but also for my faith in all humanity!

6. How much time did the writer spend on the beach?

- A. one day B. two days C. three days D. a day and a half

7. What did he lose?

- A. his car B. his key C. his wallet D. his food

8. He felt _____ when he knew that he lost his driver's license and ID card?

- A. excited B. satisfied C. happy D. angry

9. He went _____ after searching the beach and the parking lot?

- A. to the police station B. to his house C. to his office D. to a fruit store

10. What did the person who found his wallet do?

- A. He called him B. He came to his house
C. He called the police D. He gave the police his wallet

WRITING: Write the answers on the ANSWER SHEET

IV. Give the suitable preposition for each blank:

11. John left a lasting impressionme. I will never forget him.
12. My close-friend is often concernedall problems that I mention.
13. Two friends should be loyaleach other.

V. Give the correct verb tense:

14. When theyover all courses at school, they graduated in August, 2015. (pass)
15. Tomorrow, the librarianTom to take these books home. (not allow)
16. Mr. Smithus French for 2 years. (teach)
17. PeopleEnglish all over the world. (speak)
18. Ihow to play piano since I was 6. (learn)
19. It very cold now. (be)
20. She said that her parentsthere the following day. (come)
21. Before I got to Mary's party, everyone (already leave)
22. Theytennis at 10:30 yesterday morning. (play)
23. Look! George and Margathatogether. (dance)

VI. Give the correct verb form: (Gerund vs Infinitive)

24. He never admitswrong. (be)
25. George has difficultysome words in English. (spell)
26. Anne and Mary were busya cake at that time yesterday. (make)
27. The exam is coming so the teachers make their studentsEnglish a lot. (learn)
28. Do you agreeme some money. (lend)
29. Would you likea cup of tea? (have)
30. Her parents want hera doctor. (become)

VII. Transformation:

31. They spent a month finishing their project.
→ It took
32. The cat was jumping down from the roof at that time. Mary saw that.
→ Mary saw
33. When did you buy that house? (change into Present Perfect)
→ How long?

34. Henry moved to California three years ago. (change into Present Perfect)
→ Henry has
35. Mary and Anne have got the plumber to fix the water-pipes. (have)
→ Mary and Anne
36. The last time we visited our uncle was in October. (change into Present Perfect)
→ We have
37. My parents allowed us to use the cell phone after school.
→ My parents let
38. Would you like to open the window, please?
→ Would you mind?
39. Tom needs someone to water these flowers. (need)
→ These flowers
40. Mrs. Anne needed someone to mend her house. (need)
→ Mrs. Anne's house

TEST 3

MULTIPLE CHOICE: Write the answers on the ANSWER SHEET

I. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from the others:

- | | | | |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. A. laugh <u>e</u> d | B. watch <u>e</u> d | C. stop <u>p</u> ed | D. need <u>e</u> d |
| 2. A. st <u>e</u> p <u>s</u> | B. loo <u>k</u> s | C. want <u>s</u> | D. grab <u>s</u> |
| 3. A. m <u>u</u> t <u>u</u> al | B. <u>c</u> he <u>s</u> e | C. <u>c</u> hem <u>i</u> str <u>y</u> | D. <u>c</u> hur <u>ch</u> |

II. Choose the word which is stressed differently from the others:

- | | | | |
|------------------|-----------------|---------------|--------------|
| 4. A. friendship | B. begin | C. rumor | D. loyal |
| 5. A. appreciate | B. embarrassing | C. confidence | D. affective |

III. Choose the best answer:

6. The first quality of true friendship is _____.
A. selfish B. unselfish C. selfishness D. unselfishness
7. She smiled to hide her slight _____.
A. embarrassment B. embarrassing C. embarrassed D. embarrass
8. I don't like that man. He has a _____ behavior.
A. sneakily B. sneak C. sneaking D. sneaky
9. My close-friend is often concerned _____ all problems that I mention.
A. on B. with C. above D. to
10. Two friends should be loyal _____ each other.
A. on B. with C. above D. to

IV. Choose the item among A, B, C or D that best answers the question about the passage:

When we were in England last year, I went fishing with my friend, Peter. Early in the morning we were sitting quietly by the side of a lake when we had an unpleasant surprise. We saw a duck coming along with three ducklings paddling cheerfully behind her. As we watched them, there was a sudden swirl in the water. We caught a glimpse of the vicious jaws of a pike - a fish which is rather like a freshwater shark - and one of the ducklings was dragged below the surface.

This incident made Peter furious. He vowed to catch the pike. On three successive mornings we returned to the vicinity and used different kinds of bait. On the third day Peter was lucky. Using an artificial frog as bait, he managed to hook the monster. There' was a desperate fight but Peter was determined to capture the pike and he succeeded. When he had got it ashore and killed it, he weighed the fish and found that it scaled nearly thirty pounds -a record for that district.

11. *Why do you think Peter was sitting quietly by the lake?*
A. He was watching the ducks. B. He wasn't very talkative.
C. He was waiting for the pike to appear. D. He was fishing.
12. *To what does 'surprise' in line 3 probably refer?*
A. to the duck B. to the ducklings
C. to the action of the pike D. to the time of the day
13. *Which word in the third sentence of the passage suggests that the ducklings were unaware of the danger below them?*
A. three B. along C. paddling D. cheerfully
14. *What were Peter's feelings about the incident two days later?*
A. He caught and killed the pike.
B. He remained determined to catch the pike.
C. He vowed that he would catch the remaining ducklings.
D. He caught a frog and used it as bait for the pike.
15. *How much was the pike worth?*
A. about thirty pounds B. about two hundred dollars
C. no information on this point D. it scaled nearly thirty pounds

WRITING: Write the answers on the ANSWER SHEET

VI. Give the correct verb tense:

16. They _____ tennis at 10:30 yesterday morning. (play)
17. Tomorrow, the librarian _____ Tom to take these books home. (not allow)
18. Mr. Smith _____ us French for 2 years. (teach)
19. Before I got to Mary's party, everyone _____. (already leave)
20. People _____ English all over the world. (speak)
21. Look! George and Margatha _____ together. (dance)
22. I _____ how to play piano since I was 6. (learn)

VII. Give the correct verb form: (Gerund vs Infinitive)

23. I look forward to _____ to the party. (invite)
24. Would you like _____ a cup of tea? (have)
25. The exam is coming so the teachers make their students _____ English a lot. (learn)
26. Mary said "I regret _____ him earlier in my life." (meet)
27. I hoped _____ more financial aids. (provide)
28. Her parents want her _____ a doctor. (become)
29. He never admits _____ wrong. (be)
30. I don't mind _____ by you (disturb)

VIII. Transformation:

41. Learning English is easy for him.
→ It _____.
42. It was impossible for them to pass these exams.
→ Passing _____.
43. The cat was jumping down from the roof at that time. Mary saw that.
→ Mary saw _____.
44. Tom needs someone to water these flowers.
→ These flowers _____.
45. My parents allowed us to use the cell phone after school. (let)
→ My parents _____.

46. Would you like to open the window, please?
→ Would you mind _____.
47. I had us make a birthday cake.
→ I got a birthday cake _____.
48. My parents asked him to tutor me in Maths. (have)
→ My parents _____.
49. Mary and Anne have got the plumber to fix the water-pipes. (have)
→ Mary and Anne _____.
50. They spent a month finishing their project. (take)
→ It _____.

TEST 4

I. Choose the underlined word that has a different sound from the other.

1. A. ships B. forests C. books D. animals
2. A. pushed B. gained C. filled D. lived
3. A. noon B. moon C. food D. blood

II. Choose the word that has a different stress pattern from the other.

4. A. problem B. enough C. listen D. summer
5. A. example B. enjoy C. happy D. activity

III. Give the correct form of the verbs in the brackets

6. We usually (go) _____ on holiday in summer.
7. They (prepare) _____ the Christmas dinner at the moment.
8. Kite and I (wait) _____ right here until you (get) _____ back.
9. We (not, finish) _____ our lesson yet.
10. Tom (have) _____ a picnic next Sunday.
11. The Earth (go) _____ around the sun.
12. The show (start) _____ before we (arrive) _____ yesterday.
13. She (graduate) _____ university in 2007.
14. We (not, hear) _____ from him since we (leave) _____ school.
15. Mary (write) _____ the first novel when she (be) _____ 19 years old.

IV. V-ing, V-bare or to-infinitive? Active or passive?

16. He gave up (gamble) _____.
17. My parents decided (take) _____ a taxi because it was late.
18. He enjoys (call) _____ "Sir" by other people.
19. Try to avoid (make) _____ him angry.
20. He was fined for (drive) _____ without lights.
21. It is difficult to get used to (eat) _____ with chopsticks.
22. Mary agreed (go) _____ to the circus with Ann.

V. Fill in the blank with a suitable preposition.

23. He was able to provide the police some valuable information.
24. They usually clean their house at weekends.
25. Nam will take part a singing contest tomorrow.
26. She took care her son very carefully.

VI. Fill in the blank with a suitable form of the words in brackets.

27. It is an that offers free legal advice to people on low income (organize)
28. A small number of children areat home (education).
29. This is atask. (difficulty)

VII. Transformation

30. He reviewed his lessons. Then he went out for a walk.
→ Having
31. After she passed her driving test, she bought a car.
→ Having
32. She failed the exam because she was too lazy.
→ If
33. He doesn't see the signal, so he doesn't stop his car.
→ If
34. "My brother will get married next month," Mary said.
→ Mary said that
35. "Let's meet outside the cinema," he said.
→ He suggested

VIII. Choose one suitable word to fill in the blank.

beautiful	expected	living	rich	university
-----------	----------	--------	------	------------

I was with Overseas Volunteers (OV) for a year after leaving (36) _____, and I was sent to a remote village in Chad, about 500 kilometers from the capital N'Djamena. Coming from a (37) _____ country, I got quite a shock, as conditions were much harder than I had (38) _____. But after a few days I soon got used to (39) _____ there. The people were always very friendly and helpful, and I soon began to appreciate how (40) _____ the countryside was.

TEST 5

I. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from the others

1. A. mechanic B. Christmas C. church D. chemistry
2. A. this B. that C. the D. thanks

II. Choose the most suitable word for each blank:

Last Saturday, the (3) of three classes of my school took part in the annual final English (4) organized by our English teachers. Its aim was to (5) the spirit of learning English among students. The competition was sponsored by the Students' Parents Society. Mrs.Lien, our English teacher, explained the competition's rules to the students.

3. A. represent B. representatives C. representation D. representative
4. A. Competition B. Competitive C. Compete D. Competing
5. A. stimulation B. stimulating C. stimulated D. stimulate

III. Read the passage carefully and choose the best answer:

Each summer, the Winant and Clayton Volunteer program sends a group of Americans to volunteer in London for seven weeks and provides housing and a small stipend to help defray the high cost of living. After seven weeks of volunteering, participants have two weeks to travel independently before returning to London to evaluate the program and get their flight back to the United States.

The application includes a few short essays, a series of questions about the type of placement one would prefer, and an informal interview with former volunteers that gives applicants a chance to find out more about the program.

Deciding to participate takes a small leap of faith. The roster of volunteer placements and housing options can change from year to year and volunteers can't choose their placement in advance. But once you're accepted you instantly feel that you've joined a close-knit group. The volunteer coordinator is in frequent contact through mailings and e-mails to help you prepare for the trip, and there is a daylong orientation in New York that bring all the volunteers together before departure for London.

6. How long do a group of Americans volunteer in London?
A. two weeks B. each summer C. three weeks D. seven weeks
7. What does the Winant and Clayton Volunteer program provide them with?
A. housing and a small stipend B. a few short essays C. transportation D. Food and clothes
8. Which of the following is NOT included in the application?
A. A series of questions about the type of placement one would prefer.
B. The roster of volunteer placements.
C. A few short essays.
D. An informal interview with former volunteers.
9. What can the volunteers do after seven weeks of volunteering?
A. They can return to London.
B. They can have two weeks to evaluate the program.
C. They can have two weeks to travel independently.
D. They can get their flight back to the United States.
10. How does the volunteer coordinator keep in contact with you?
A. through mailings and emails B. through phone and emails
C. through TV and newspaper D. through radio and cell phone.

IV. Choose the word whose stress is different from the others:

11. A. superman B. synthetic C. rotate D. professor
12. A. forests B. singing C. concerning D. burning

V. Choose the best answer among A, B, C or D that best completes each sentence

13. She was deeply.....of her behavior at the party.
A. shameful B. shame C. ashamed D. shamed
- 14..... from what you say, you are innocent.
A. To judge B. Judging C. Judge D. To be judged
15. Alice didn't expect..... to Bill's party.
A. asking B. being asked C. to ask D. to be asked

IX. Preposition:

16. Tom used to dream being a pilot
17. Her parents prevented the boy playing games
18. Mary congratulated me passing the driving test
19. Naay insisted driving Anne to the airport.

X. Give the correct verb form: (Gerund vs Infinitive)

20. Would you like a cup of tea? (have)
21. If you cross the street without looking, you'll risk down. (knock)
22. They spent a lot of time lanterns for the poor kids. (make)
23. She is busy (cook)
24. He asked me in his car. (smoke)

XI. Tense of verb:

25. Before she watched TV, she her clothes. (**wash**)
26. The light out while we were listening to music. (**go**)
27. The Earth around the sun. (go)
28. Up to now, Tom and Mary in the U.S. (arrive)
29. She told me if it the following day, she would come to see us. (**not rain**)
30. John to return my book the previous day. (**promise**)

XII. Transformation:

31. Henry fed the dog. It sat down to its own dinner.
→ **Being**
32. "Don't be too confident of yourself" I advised her.
→ **I advised**
33. "I'll take you home after the party, Jimmy!" said George.
→ **George offered**
34. Martin was exhausted by his hard work. He threw himself on his bed.
→ **Being**
35. She left work early because she didn't feel well.
→ **Not**
36. "I'm sorry, I didn't phone you earlier yesterday, David", Sharon said.
→ **Sharon apologized**
37. He said he was not guilty of stealing the car.
→ **He denied**
38. "What about having a party on Saturday?", Mr. Henry said.
→ **Mr. Henry suggested**
39. "If I were in your place, I would accept John's invitation," she said to him.
→ **She told him**
40. "It's you who took my bag" said the woman to the boy.
→ **The woman accused**

TEST 6

I. Choose the underlined word that has a different sound from the others.

- | | | | |
|-----------------|-------------|-------------|--------------|
| 1. A. concerned | B. received | C. attached | D. concealed |
| 2. A. smells | B. cuts | C. opens | D. plays |
| 3. A. question | B. require | C. quiet | D. technique |

II. Choose the word that has a different stress pattern from the others.

- | | | | |
|----------------|----------|------------|-------------|
| 4. A. decrease | B. limit | C. control | D. increase |
|----------------|----------|------------|-------------|

5. A. planning B. figure C. method D. population

III. Choose the best option A, B, C or D to complete the sentence.

6. "Did you see useful in this book?" Mai asked me.
A. anything B. something C. nothing D. everything
7. The bus was completely empty. There wasn't on it.
A. no one B. ones C. anyone D. someone
8. There's _____ at the door. Can you come and see who it is?
A. everyone B. anyone C. no one D. someone
9. This novel is not interesting. Will you lend me another?
A. some B. any C. one D. ones
10. "Ketty thanked me having prevented her from a fierce dog.
A. on B. about C. to D. for
11. Tet is a occasion for all members of families to gather.
A. special B. specially C. specialize D. specializing
12. Mai Huong congratulated me the exam with flying colors.
A. of passing B. about passing C. on passing D. to pass
13. Banh Chung is made sticky rice, green beans and fatty pork.
A. on B. from C. with D. by
14. All the children are full of when the Mid Autumn Festival is coming near.
A. excite B. exciting C. excited D. excitement
15. Mai: I believe that the population has caused many problems today.
Hoa: I think so, too
A. explore B. exploring C. exposure D. explosion

IV. Read the passage carefully and choose the best answer.

Thomas A. Edison was born in Milan, Ohio, On February 11th, 1847. His family moved to Port Huron, Michigan, when he was seven years old. Surprisingly, he attended school for only two months. His mother, a former teacher, taught him a few things, but Thomas was mostly self-educated. His natural curiosity led him to start experimenting at a young age.

Thomas Alva Edison lit up the world with his invention of the eclectic light. Although the electric light seems to be the most useful, it was not his only invention. He also invented the record player, the motion picture camera, and over 1,200 other things. About every two weeks he created something new.

He worked 16 out of every 24 hours. Sometimes he worked so intensely that his wife had to remind him to sleep and eat.

Thomas Edison died at the age of 84 on October 18th, 1931, at his estate in West Orange, New Jersey. He left numerous inventions that improved the quality of life all over the world.

16. Which is **NOT TRUE** about Edison?
A). He didn't go to school at all.
B). He was the author of more than 1,200 inventions.
D). He worked 16 hours everyday.
C). He invented the electric light.
17. The word was mostly "self-educated" in paragraph 1 can be best placed by
A). thought of himself B). was born a genius
C). mostly taught himself D). loved school
18. What is considered Edison's most useful invention?
A). the camera B). telephone
C). the record player D). the electric light
19. Where was Edison born?

- A). In Huron B). In Michigan C). In Ohio D). In New Jersey
20. How old was Edison when he died?
- A). 84 B). 16 C). 47 D). 24

V. Give the correct form of the verbs in the brackets

21. Nam (go) _____ to school by bus everyday.
22. I (write) _____ a letter to Janet last night when she phoned
23. My family (go) _____ to Hanoi last summer.
24. If my bicycle (not, break) _____ down, I would have caught him.
25. She (speak) _____ English better if she had more time.
26. If I have time, I (visit) _____ you.
27. He asked me what my name (be) _____
28. She will send you some postcards as soon as she (arrive) _____ in London.
29. My bike (just paint) _____ by my brother.
30. I (do) _____ my homework at 8:30 last night.
31. I never forget what you (just, tell) _____ me.
32. My brother (join) _____ the army when he was young.
33. _____ you (speak) _____ to her yesterday?
34. _____ you ever (fly) _____ in a balloon?
35. The children (watch) _____ cartoon films when I came in yesterday.
36. This decision (not, become) _____ effective until it is approved.
37. If I _____ (know) that you were coming, I'd have baked a cake.
38. If I see him I (give) _____ him a lift.

VI. Transformation

39. "Phone me whenever you have problems.", said Tom
→ Tom told me.....
40. He said to me, "Would you like to have a drink with me?"
→ He invited
41. "You stole my best cassette, Elizabeth!" said John
→ John accused
42. "I want a camera for my birthday." The boy said to his father
→ The boy said
43. "Are you going by train?" She asked me
→ She asked
44. "Don't forget to bring your passport with you tomorrow."
→ She reminded me
45. "How long are you going to stay?" I asked him
→ I asked
46. "If I find your passport, I will phone you at once." The man said to me
→ The man told.....
47. "If I knew his address, I would give it to you." Nam said to Lan
→ Nam said.....
48. If she doesn't hurry, she will be late.
→ **Unless**
49. The car is too expensive, so I can't buy it.
→ **If**
50. The accident happened because the driver in front stopped so suddenly.
→ **If**

TEST 7

I. Reading comprehension:

As Christmas evolved in the United States, new customs were adopted and many old ones were reworked. The legend of Santa Claus, for example, had origins in Europe and was brought by Dutch settlers to New York in the early 18th century. Traditionally, Santa Claus - from the Dutch Sinter Klaas - was depicted as a tall, dignified, religious figure riding a white horse through the air. Known as Saint Nicholas in Germany, he was usually accompanied by Black Peter, an elf who punished disobedient children. In North America he eventually developed into a fat, jolly old gentleman who had neither the religious attributes of Saint Nicholas nor the strict disciplinarian character of Black Peter.

Santa's transformation began in 1823, when a New York newspaper published the poem "A Visit from Saint Nicholas", which Clement Clark Moore had written to amuse his daughter. The poem introduced many Americans to the story of a kindly saint who flew over house-stops in a reindeer-drawn sleigh. Portraits and drawings of Santa Claus by American illustrator Thomas Nast further strengthened the legend during the second half of the 19th century. Living at the North Pole and assisted by elves, the modern Santa produced and delivered toys to all good children. By the late 19th century, he had become such a prominent figure of American folklore that in 1897, when Virginia O'Hanlon wrote to the *New York Sun* newspaper asking if Santa was real, she received a direct answer: "Yes, Virginia, there is a Santa Claus".

1. Who brought the legend of Santa Claus to the USA according to the passage?
A. Sinter Klaas B. Saint Nicholas C. A German D. Dutch settlers
2. Who was Black Peter?
A. An elf accompanying Saint Nicholas B. An elf who rode a white horse
C. One of the disobedient children D. A popular traditional figure
3. Where did the legend of Santa Claus come from?
A. The North Pole B. Europe C. North America D. The City of New York
4. According to Clement Clark Moore's poem
A. Santa Claus had nothing different in appearance from the traditional one.
B. Santa Claus had wings and could fly.
C. Santa Claus liked poetry.
D. Santa Claus was a kindly saint who flew over house-stops in a sleigh.
5. Which of the following statements is true?
A. Santa Claus was an imaginary old man created by artists based on traditional figure.
B. Living in the North Poly, Santa Claus visited children at Christmas.
C. Santa Claus was a real figure living in northern America.
D. Santa Claus was a story based on Saint Nicholas and Black Peter.

II. Multiple Choice:

6. She was not fired. She left the company
A. volunteer B. voluntary C. volunteers D. voluntarily
7. The fight illiteracy continued in the summer of 2002.
A. from B. against C. about D. to
8. Better health care and agriculture have led to rapid population
A. growth B. grow C. growing D. grew
9. The population the world has been increasing faster and faster.
A. of B. in C. on D. at
10. Each group has to send ato perform in front of class.
A. representation B. representative C. representing D. represented
11. He was very to be asked to play for the school team.
A. excitement B. exciting C. excited D. excites

III. Choose the word whose stress pattern is different from others:

12. A. marriage B. attract C. beauty D. survey
13. A. confide B. believe C. suppose D. couple

IV. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from others:

14. A. smoothly B. three C. enthusiasm D. think
15. A. machinery B. march C. cheerfully D. merchant

V. Choose the underlined part among A, B, C or D that needs correcting.

16. If the question were not so difficult, I will be able to answer it.
A B C D
17. If I were you, I didn't buy that old building.
A B C D
18. I get a bad mark. I wish I did my homework last night.
A B C D
19. Peter spent many years studying Eastern philosophy in his search for the meaning of the life.
A B C D
20. His father doesn't approve of him to go to the banquet without dressing formally.
A B C D

WRITING:

VI. Give the correct tense of verbs:

21. People English all over the world. (speak)
22. If she you now, she would help him a lot. (be)
23. Tom and Samantha badminton at 8:30 yesterday morning. (play)
24. When they over all courses at school, they graduated in August, 2015. (pass)
25. If I hadn't been sick yesterday, I the experiment now.
26. I how to play piano since I was 6. (learn)
27. We them English for 2 years. (teach)
28. If I she was ill, I would have visited her. (know)
29. Look! George and Margatha together. (dance)
30. Tom homework yesterday. (not/do)
31. If she studies hard, she abroad. (study)
32. If they had had a visa, they abroad. (go)

VII. Give the correct forms of the verbs in brackets

33. Tom's parents let him on a picnic with his friends. (go)
34. They don't allow here. (smoke)
35. She admits about the news. (tell)
36. My parents decided me to a different school. (send)
37. You don't mind the window. (open)
38. I can't help when listening to his story. (cry)
39. Her parents want her a doctor. (become)
40. Do you mind if your patient needs your help? (call)

VIII. Transformation:

41. The house was built of wood, so it was clearly a fire risk. => **Being**
42. The wind was blowing hard, so we didn't take the boat out for a ride yesterday. => **If**
43. 'If I catch the plane, I'll be home by five,' he said. => **He said if**
44. "You have passed the exam. Congratulations!", Jim said to me => **Jim congratulated**

45. 'If Jane hadn't helped me, I'd have been in bad trouble', he said => **He told**
46. "Would you like to go on a picnic with us?", they said => **They invited**
47. Go right now or you will be late for school. => **Unless**
48. Without the air, we would die. => **If**
49. 'If I were you, I'd stop smoking', she said to her brother. => **She advised**
50. "Why don't we sing a few songs?", he said => **He suggested**

TEST 8

I. Give the correct form of the verbs in the brackets

1. They (spend)their holiday in New Zealand last summer.
2. Who (live) in that house before the Smiths (buy) it?
3. I (give) you this book as soon as I (finish) reading it.
4. Would you mind (lend)me 5\$?
5. He (not be)here since Christmas.
6. These are the machines (make) in Japan.
7. When the phone (ring)....., I (have)..... a bath.
8. You (see)my garden at its best if you (be)here last week.
9. If someone (give)you a helicopter what would you do with it?
10. The floor (clean).....once a day.

II. Fill in the blank with Who, Whom, Whose or Which.

11. Monica,is my new boss, is very easy to work with.
12. The biggest reason for.....I didn't take the job is the low pay.
13. The boy about.....I've talked is a very successful student.
14. The girl design had been chosen stepped to the platform to receive the award.
15. A clock is an instrument tells you the time.

III. Fill in the blank with a suitable preposition.

16. Thanh Ba post office is equipped advanced technology.
17. Human beings have a great influence the rest of the world.
18. Some kinds of animals are danger of becoming extinct.
19. His laziness resulted bad marks.

IV. Fill in the blank with a suitable form of the words in brackets.

20. He is a quietly spoken, man. (think)
21. Television has become part of our everyday (exist)
22. The wind farm may be able to generate for 2000 homes. (electric)
23. Theof dinosaurs occurred millions of years ago. (extinct)

V. Choose the underlined word that has a different sound from the other.

- | | | | |
|-------------------------|-------------------|--------------------|----------------------|
| 24. A. plenty | B. energy | C. only | D. <u>h</u> dropower |
| 25. A. surv <u>i</u> ve | B. ex <u>i</u> st | C. fore <u>s</u> t | D. r <u>e</u> spect |

26. A. transfer B. newspaper C. thousand D. relatives

VI. Choose the word that has a different stress pattern from the other.

27. A. express B. capacity C. subscriber D. distribution
28. A. industry B. ordinary C. document D. trainee

VII. Transformation:

29. The boy is very sad. His father is seriously ill. (Relative clause)
→
30. Yesterday I saw Mr. Clare. He was enjoying dinner in a restaurant. (Relative clause)
→
31. The music was wonderful. We listened to it last night. (Relative pronouns with prepositions)
→
32. The woman who has won the race is very proud. (Reduce relative clause)
→
33. The film which was showed on TV last night was so boring. (Reduce relative clause)
→
34. Britain was the first nation which was industrialized. (Reduce relative clause)
→

VIII. Choose one suitable word to fill in each blank.

<i>About</i>	<i>pollution</i>	<i>fresh</i>
<i>comfortable</i>	<i>different</i>	<i>waste</i>

More than two hundred years ago, the term “environmental pollution” was quite strange to people. They live healthily, drank pure water, and breathed (35) air. In those days, industry was not well-developed. Nowadays, the situation is quite (36) The world today is faced with many major threats. The most dangerous one of all is war, and after the threat of war is pollution. People all over the world are worried (37) things that are happening to the environment. Actually, it is man that is destroying the surroundings with many kinds of (38) From the devices that make human life more (39) and convenient. We all know about damage that pollution can cause but no one wants to get rid of the material life with many devices leading to pollution. It is worth spending a lot of time talking about (40)

TEST 9

I. Choose the word or phrase that best fits the blank space in each sentence:

- The health of children is being by exhaust fumes.
A. endangered B. dangerous C. endanger D. danger
- We offer the best service with a well-trained staff, who are always thoughtful and
A. courteousness B. courteous C. courtesy D. courteously
- Many endangered species have to protect themselves from
A. extinct B. survival C. extinction D. survive
- The is one of the most important thing when we have an interview.
A. punctuation B. punctual C. punctually D. punctuality
- Cong Vinh is a football player.

- A. speedy B. speedily C. rapidly D. speed
6. The government has introduced laws to prohibit killing endangered animals.
A. reduce B. stop C. restrict D. control

II. Choose the item among A, B, C or D that best answers the question about the passage.

The warming of the Pacific Ocean creates weather patterns that affect the world. When the waters warm, the amount of rainfall in Indonesia and the surrounding regions decreases. Australia could even experience a drought. On the other hand, Chile, which borders the Pacific Ocean, is preparing for severe rainstorms. In Pakistan and northwestern India, the weather pattern makes the monsoon season weaker and makes the area much drier.

This phenomenon is called El Nino and is used by weather forecasters to make long range weather predictions. Forecasters know that El Nino will bring unusually heavy rains to southwestern part of the United States and make the central part of the country drier.

El Nino itself used to be predictable. It would occur every two or seven years. But now, the weather pattern is becoming more constant. Scientists are unsure of the reason of this change.

7. What would characterize the effects of El Nino?
A. They're widespread. B. They're beginning. C. They're short-lived. D. They're decreasing.
8. What phenomenon defines El Nino?
A. The rainstorms in Australia. B. The drought in Chile.
C. The warming of the Pacific Ocean. D. The dryness of southwestern US.
9. Which region will be abnormally wet?
A. Pakistan. B. Australia. C. Southwestern US. D. Central US.
10. The word "predictable" in paragraph 3 means.....
A. that can be known in advance B. that can be serious C. rare D. special
11. Which is not an effect of El Nino?
A. Droughts. B. Heavy rainfalls. C. Weak monsoons. D. Global warming.

III. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the others:

12. A. joking B. old C. now D. phone
13. A. counting B. mountain C. about D. shoulder

IV. Pick out the word that has the stress different from that of the other words.

14. A. dental B. device C. drunkard D. endless
15. A. relate B. edit C. region D. final

V. Complete the sentences with appropriate preposition

16. Ann often gets up early 7 o'clock.
17. His girl friend was born 17th August, 1990.
18. We graduated from USSH 2012.
19. Our family will move to the US this winter.

VI. Complete the sentences with relative clause: WHO, WHOM, WHICH, THAT, WHOSE

20. This school is only for children first language is not English.
21. My parents, were born in the north of England, moved to London to find work.
22. Jane, mother is a physician, is very good at biology.
23. The man by we were scolded was unpleasant.
24. The books I'd ordered from a bookshop will arrive next week.

VII. Give correct the verb tenses:

25. you to my party next Saturday? (come)

26. He had waited for her for nearly one hour last night before she (come)
27. My grandpa **is** 62 years old now. (be).
28. What kind of movie they at 8:30 last night? (watch)
29. After he from the horseback, he was taken to hospital and had an operation. (fall)
30. Tom and Sarah homework in the library at this time. (do)

VIII. Transformation

31. That is Mr. Jones. His son won the scholarship last week. (relative clause)
=> That is Mr. Jones
32. The man was very kind. I talked to him yesterday. (relative clause with preposition)
=> The man
33. My brother earns a lot of money. He works in Warsaw. (relative clause)
=> My brother
34. This actor is really rich. His films are very exciting. (relative clause)
=> This actor
35. The ships were swift. We sailed on them. (relative clause which preposition)
=> The ships
36. I want to talk to Sarah. You have just met her in hall. (relative clause)
=> I
37. A girl was injured in the accident. She is now in hospital. (relative clause)
=> A girl
38. A building was destroyed in the fire. It has now been rebuilt. (relative clause)
=> A building
39. The picture was beautiful. She was looking at it. (relative clause with preposition)
=> The picture
40. That boy is really smart. Sarah is reminding me of him. (relative clause with preposition)
=> That boy

TEST 10

I. Give the correct form of the verbs in the brackets

1. When we arrived at the party, everyone (dance).....
2. Oliver greeted me like a long-lost friend he (not see)for years.
3. What (you, do).....at the weekend?
4. The letter (be).....here tomorrow.
5. She (wash) the floor every week.
6. The children are very quiet. Go and see what they (do).....
7. He had a bad fall while he (repair)..... his roof.
8. He (not smoke) for three weeks. He is trying to give it up.
9. If I were sent to prison, you (visit).....me?
10. Neither my mother nor I (be)at home today.

II. Fill in the blank with a suitable preposition.

11. It is said that there will be some more new sports added the Games.
12. He seems to be successfulhis business.
13. Mary can play the piano well and is very good singing.
14. You should not screw and throwwaste paper. Keep it for the mini-project.
15. Yuri Gagarin became the first man to travel into spaceApril 12th, 1961.

III. Fill in the blank with a suitable form of the words in brackets .

16. Without the pull of the earth, we would be(weight)
17. I really admire him for his.....(succeed)
18. My for my mother is infinite. (admire)
19. One of my hobbies isstamps. (collect)

IV. Tag-questions

20. Everybody is here now,?
21. Jack went to the supermarket,?
22. She can't swim,?
23. Nobody knows the answer,?
24. Sue doesn't know John,?

V. Choose the underlined word that has a different sound from the other.

25. A. pychology B. space C. plane D. project
26. A. relative B. variety C. accompany D. guitarist
27. A. number B. rugby C. stadium D. multi-sport

VI. Choose the word that has a different stress pattern from the other.

28. A. knowledge B. friendship C. athlete D. compete
29. A. royal B. wedding C. collect D. special

VII. Transformation:

30. **My younger sister** always keeps her doll carefully. (**Cleft sentence**)

→ It

31. Hoa borrowed **the English-Vietnamese Dictionary** from the teacher. (**Cleft sentence**)

→ It

32. My husband waters **the flowers** every day. (**Cleft sentence in the passive**)

→ It

33. He didn't write. He didn't phone. (**neither...nor**)

→ He

34. I respect them and I admire them. (**both ...and**)

→ I both

35. She is very charming. Moreover, she is very intelligent. (**not only...but also**)

→ She

VIII. Choose one suitable word to fill in each blank.

Stamp collecting is the collecting of postage stamps and related objects, such as envelopes or packages with stamps on them. It is one of the world's most popular hobbies, with estimates of the number of collectors ranging up to 20 million in the United States alone.

Many casual collectors enjoy accumulating stamps without worrying about the tiny details, but the creation of a large or comprehensive collection generally requires some philatelic knowledge. This is especially important for those who intend to spend large amounts for stamps.

Stamp collectors are an important source of revenue for some small countries that create limited runs of elaborate stamps designed mainly to be bought by stamp collectors. The stamps produced by these countries far exceed the postal needs of the countries.

Some collectors, observing the generally rising prices of rare stamps, have taken to Philatelic Investment. Rare stamps are among the most portable of tangible investments, and are easy to store. **They** offer an attractive alternative to art, other collectible investments, and precious metals.

36. The estimated number of stamp collectors in the United States is _____
A. 30 million B. 20 million C. 10 million D. 15 million
37. Philatelic knowledge is especially important for _____
A. many casual collectors enjoy
B. some small countries
C. those who intend to spend large amounts for stamps
D. the postal needs of the countries
38. Why have some collectors taken to Philatelic investment? – Because they _____
A. have observed the generally rising prices of stamps.
B. have observed the generally rising prices of rare stamps.
C. have observed the generally low prices of stamps.
D. haven't observed the generally rising prices of stamps.
39. The word **they** in paragraph 4 refers to _____
A. Stamp collectors B. Small countries C. Rare stamps D. The prices of rare stamps
40. Which of the following is **NOT true** about rare stamps? - _____
A. They are among the most portable of tangible investments.
B. It's easy for us to store rare stamps.
C. They are an important source of revenue.
D. They offer an attractive alternative to art.

TEST 11

I. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from the others:

1. A. sits B. shops C. kicks D. reads
2. A. march B. mechanic C. reach D. torch

II. Choose the word whose stress pattern is different from others:

3. A. receive B. devote C. compete D. beauty

III. Choose your best answer:

4. Two out of three people _____ by lightning survive.
A. who is struck B. struck C. who strike D. striking
5. The six _____ at the first Games were basketball, cycling, football, aquatic sports, athletics and weightlifting.
A. sports events B. sport events C. sports event D. sport event
6. The Vietnamese participants took part _____ this event with great enthusiasm.
A. on B. from C. in D. at
7. Have you ever met the man _____ over there?
A. is standing B. who are standing C. stood D. standing
8. All I need is to practice _____ and I should be able to do it.
A. regular B. regularly C. regularity D. regularize
9. He is very good _____ accompanying people singing with his guitar and I admire him much.
A. from B. in C. at D. on
10. Daniel was the most suitable candidate _____ for the job.
A. which apply B. to apply C. applied D. to be applied

IV. Pick out ONE best option (A,B,C, or D), based on the following passage:

The Asian Games, also called the ASIAD, is a multi-sport event held every four years among athletes from all over Asia. The Asian Games are regulated by the Olympic Council of Asia (OCA) under the supervision of the International Olympic Committee (IOC). Medals are awarded in each event with gold for the first place, silver for the second and bronze for the third. This tradition started in 1951. The Asian Games are dominated by the People's Republic of China. Competitors are entered by a National Olympic Committee (NOC) to represent their country of citizenship. National anthems and flags accompany the medal ceremonies, and the table showing the number of medals won by each country is widely used. In general, only recognized nations are represented, but a few non-sovereign countries are allowed to take part in. The special case of Taiwan was handled by having it compete as Chinese Taipei due to the political status of Taiwan.

The 15th Asian Games were held in Doha, Qatar from December 1st to December 16th, 2015. The next ASIAD will be held in Guangzhou, China from November 2nd to November 8th, 2019

11. The Asian Games are _____.
A. dominated by the People's Republic of China B. supervised by the Olympic Council of Asia
C. rewarded with only gold medals D. regulated by International Olympic Committee
12. The Asian Games is _____.
A. held every four years B. also called ASIAD C. a multi-sport event D. all are correct
13. Which of the following sentences is not true?
A. In general only recognized nations are represented.
B. Gold medals are awarded for the first place.
C. The table showing the number of medals won by each country is widely used.
D. The 15th Asian Games were held from December 2nd to December 16th, 2015.
14. Where will the 16th Asian Games be held?
A. In Japan B. In China C. in Doha D. In Taiwan
15. The best title for the passage is _____.
A. The National Olympic Committee B. The Olympic Council of Asia.
C. The International Olympic Committee D. The Asian Games (ASIAD)

WRITING:**V. Verb form:**

16. After Mary _____ her degree, she will work in her father's company. (finish)
17. She _____ French since the age of five. (learn)
18. The teacher-in-charge saw Sue in town yesterday but she _____ him. (not see)
19. While my mother _____, my father was mending a chair yesterday. (garden)
20. He didn't go home until he _____ his work. (finish)
21. Up to now, I _____ a lot of information about her. (get)
22. How is your English? – Not bad. It _____ slowly. (improve)
23. When the teacher _____ the room, the students were talking. (enter)

VI. Complete the sentences with Who/ Which/ Whose/ Whom

24. She is the nurse _____ looked after me.
25. My daughter, _____ you saw yesterday, is the owner of that house.
26. The police have arrested the man _____ car bore a false number-plate.
27. We visit Belgrade, _____ is the capital city of Yugoslavia.

VII. Word form

28. The Asian Games are held for the purpose of developing _____ knowledge and friendship. (interculture)
29. My uncle, who is an _____ guitarist, taught me how to play. (accomplish)
30. I have a modest little glass fish tank where I keep a _____ of little fish. (various)

VIII. Transformation:

31. The doctor said that I just needed a good holiday. (cleft sentence)

- _____.
32. Fans gave Selena Gomez beautiful flowers. (cleft sentence in passive)
→ _____.
33. John doesn't play tennis. David doesn't play tennis, either. (neither ... nor)
→ _____.
34. His presence at the meeting frightened the children. (cleft sentence)
→ _____.
35. She is the only woman. She was appointed to the board. (reducing the relative clause)
→ _____.
36. You learn a foreign language by constant practice. (cleft sentence)
→ _____.
37. Anna has got both new jeans and new shoes. (not only ... but also)
→ _____.
38. The city suffers from air pollution. The city suffers from water pollution. (both ... and)
→ _____.
39. You can play football or Peter can play football now. (either ... or)
→ _____.
40. That girl has left. I borrowed the book from her. (relative clause with preposition)
→ _____.

TEST 12

MULTIPLE CHOICE: Write the answers on the ANSWER SHEET

I. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from the others:

- | | | | |
|------------------------|--------------------|-----------------------|----------------------|
| 1. A. cough <u>h</u> | B. laugh <u>h</u> | C. roof <u>f</u> | D. caught <u>h</u> t |
| 2. A. marked <u>ed</u> | B. watch <u>ed</u> | C. wick <u>ed</u> | D. reach <u>ed</u> |
| 3. A. c <u>o</u> mfort | B. h <u>o</u> bby | C. kn <u>o</u> wledge | D. p <u>o</u> pular |

II. Choose the word whose stress pattern is different from others:

- | | | | |
|----------------|-------------|-------------|-----------|
| 4. A. conserve | B. balanced | C. evidence | D. spirit |
| 5. A. donkey | B. picture | C. rehearse | D. travel |

III. Choose your best answer:

6. Our recreation is quite different _____ yours.
B. in B. on C. at D. from
7. That must be Jenny's umbrella, _____?
B. must it B. mustn't it C. must they D. mustn't they
8. Yuri Gagarin lifted _____ into space aboard - the Vostok 1 at 9:07 AM.
B. into B. off C. about D. within
9. Do you still remember the day _____ we first met?
B. on which B. on whom C. in which D. in whom
10. You should not indulge yourself _____ anything that can form a bad habit.
B. in B. on C. at D. from
11. Susan seldom goes to church on Sunday, _____?
B. doesn't she B. does she C. did she D. didn't she
12. Some of the people _____ to the party can't come.
A. inviting B. invited C. who invited D. they were invited
13. Jennifer Lopez is the most famous actress _____ on stage of this theatre.
A. appears B. which appears C. to appear D. appeared
14. Do you know the woman _____ next door?
A. lives B. live C. living D. lived

15. Henry and Kathy have bought a new house, _____?
A. have they B. do they C. don't they D. haven't they

IX. Pick out ONE best option (A,B,C, or D), based on the following passage:

Sumo wrestling is a national sport in Japan. Every year, there are six tournaments and millions of Japanese watch them on television. A tournament is a series of matches.

Sumo is almost as old as the nation of Japan itself. Stories say that there was Sumo wrestling over two thousand years ago. History says that there were national Sumo tournaments in the eighth century.

Often, athletes are thin and can move very quickly. It is beautiful to watch them play. However, Sumo wrestlers weigh from 100 to 160 kilos. One famous wrestler weighed 195 kilos. Sumo wrestlers do not look beautiful, and Sumo wrestling is a very low sport.

Sumo wrestlers start training when they are boys. They exercise to make their bodies strong. They also eat and eat and eat.

They wrestle in a round ring with a sand floor. A wrestler loses the match if he leaves the rings. He is also the loser if any part of his body except his feet touches the floor. Each wrestler tries to push the other down on the floor or out of the ring. Sometimes, one wrestler just steps aside when the other wrestler rushes towards him. Then that wrestler falls down or falls out of the ring.

Sumo is not very popular in other countries, but the Japanese love it. Even young people find this traditional sport exciting.

16. How many Sumo wrestling tournaments are there in Japanese every year?
A. 2 B. 4 C. 6 D. 8
17. All the following sentences are correct EXCEPT:
A. Sumo athletes wrestle in a round ring with a sand floor
B. A wrestlers lose the match when leaving rings.
C. Sumo has become very popular all over the world.
D. Millions of Japanese watch Sumo tournaments on TV.
18. Sumo wrestlers _____.
A. start training when they are more than 20 years old B. don't eat regularly
C. exercise so that their bodies stronger and stronger D. always eat nutritious food
19. The main idea of the passage is _____.
A. Sumo wrestling athletes B. Sumo wrestling – a national sport in Japan
C. The ways of training to be a famous Sumo D. How Sumo athletes compete with each other.
20. According to the passage, it is true to say that _____.
A. Sumo is almost as old as the nation of Japan itself. B. Sumo wrestling is a very low sport
C. Sumo wrestlers weigh from 100 to 160 kilos. D. A, B and C

WRITING:

X. Verb form:

21. Laura _____ a picture at 6:00 yesterday morning. (paint)
22. Jessica rarely _____ to the movies, does she? (go)
23. In the past, no one _____ precisely what would happen to a human being in space. (know)
24. The Great Pyramid of Giza is said _____ by slaves over a 20-year period. (build)
25. They went home after they _____ their homework. (finish)
26. Julia Robert is said _____ the best movie star now. (be)
27. When I came to visit her, she _____ a bath. (take)
28. He _____ a lot in the last couple of years, hasn't he? (learn)
29. Daniel often goes to work by bus, but today he _____ to work by bike. (go)

XI. Fill in the blanks: who – whom – which – that – whose

30. That picture, _____ Naui had painted, was shown in an exhibition last year.
31. I am looking after some children _____ are terribly spoilt.
32. Mary works for a company _____ toys are popular with children currently.
33. I have three brothers, all of _____ got married.
34. The cat _____ tail is long doesn't belong to me.
35. Yesterday, I saw the most famous actor _____ was taking photos in that corner.

XII. Word form:

36. I would not call myself an avid stamp _____. (collect)
37. If there were a _____ failure, Gagarin could never get back to the Earth. (technique)
38. How would the body _____ to the extreme changes in temperature? (reaction)
39. _____, he could break the record and received the gold medal. (succeed)
40. Our country had struggled _____ for independence. (hero)

XIII. Transformation:

41. Jane is keen on stamp collecting. Her brother is, too. (both ... and...)
→ _____
42. It was reported that tsunami had killed many people. (special passive voice)
→ Many people _____
43. My secretary sent the bill to Mr. Brown yesterday morning. (cleft sentence in passive)
→ _____
44. Jimmy hasn't got a car. He hasn't got a bike, either. (neither ... nor...)
→ _____
45. Water is polluted with both chemical wastes and exhaust fumes. (not only ... but also)
→ _____
46. Mary says that Peter often decorates their houses on Christmas Day. (cleft sentence)
→ _____
47. You can play football or you can go skating now. (either ... or ...)
→ _____
48. It is said that our Earth is the only green planet. (special passive voice)
→ _____
49. The trouble started when the police arrived. (cleft sentence)
→ _____
50. The teacher-in-charge has given me good advice. Mary is talking to her. (relative with preposition)
→ _____

TEST 13

I. Choose one word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from the others.

- | | | | |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------|----------------------|---------------------|
| 1) A. loved <u>ed</u> | B. prepared <u>ed</u> | C. played <u>ed</u> | D. ended <u>ed</u> |
| 2) A. friends <u>s</u> | B. animal <u>s</u> | C. ship <u>s</u> | D. teacher <u>s</u> |
| 3) A. psych <u>ch</u> ology | B. <u>ch</u> emistry | C. <u>ch</u> aracter | D. <u>ch</u> urch |

II. Choose the word that has a different stress pattern from the other.

- | | | | |
|-----------------|--------------|--------------|----------------|
| 4) A. variety | B. Australia | C. accompany | D. interesting |
| 5) A. cosmonaut | B. beautiful | C. enormous | D. technical |

III. Read the passage carefully and choose the correct answer

Pham Tuan was born on February 14, 1947 in Thai Binh province in Northern Vietnam. He (6) the Vietnamese people's Air Force in 1965. He was the first Vietnamese cosmonaut, and also the first Asian (excluding Russia) in space.

He was (7) as part of the sixth international crew for the Intercosmos programme on April 1st, 1979. Pham Tuan, along with Soviet cosmonaut, Viktor Gorbalko, was launched from Baikonur Cosmodrome on July 23rd, 1980, on (8) Soyuz 37. They were to service the Salyut 6 station.

During his time in (9), he performed experiments on the melting of mineral samples in microgravity. He also carried out plant experiments on azolla. Pham Tuan also photographed Vietnam from orbit for mapping purpose.

Pham Tuan was in space for 7 days, 20 hours and 42 minutes. He (10) 142 orbits, and returned to the earth on July 31st, 1980. He is now a Lieutenant General, Head of General Department of Defence Industry of The Ministry of Defence, and a member of the national Assembly.

- | | | | |
|------------------|-------------|--------------|-------------|
| 6) A. gathered | B. joined | C. collected | D. chose |
| 7) A. selected | B. picked | C. held | D. searched |
| 8) A. poster | B. plateau | C. floor | D. board |
| 9) A. round | B. cycle | C. oval | D. orbit |
| 10) A. completed | B. achieved | C. succeeded | D. took |

IV. Choose A, B, C, or D answer to complete the sentences

- 11) They really keep me and I'm glad to do it.
A. occupy B. occupation C. occupied D. occupational
- 12) The 27 years old Soviet cosmonaut became the first person to eat and drink in
A. weight B. weighty C. weightless D. weightlessness
- 13) I have not been veryat this
A. success B. successful C. succeed D. successfully
- 14) Pyramid was to served as a tomb when he died and to the burial chamber from the weather.
A. protect B. protective C. protection D. protector
- 15) Yuri Gagarin liftedin to space aboard the Vostok 1.
A. on B. in C. off D. at
- 16) There are other hobbies that I indulge for a while.
A. with B. in C. off D. at
- 17) They succeeded persuaded their parents to take a vacation last week.
A. for B. about C. off D. in
- 18) After Gagarin's death, his home town was named him
A. after B. about C. off D. in
- 19) He couldn't swim,?
A. could him B. could he C. couldn't he D. couldn't him
- 20) Nobody cheated in the exam,?
A. did they B. didn't they C. did he D. didn't he

V. Put the verbs into the correct forms

- 21) This is the worst storm I (ever, see)
- 22) She (work)on her degree now.
- 23) While I was going to school, I (meet)..... him.
- 24) After they (go)....., I sat down and rested.
- 25) I (try)to learn French for years.
- 26) The Earth (go)around the sun.
- 27) The farmer (work).....in the field at that time yesterday.
- 28) She (write) that letter two years ago.
- 29) He had just gone to bed when the alarm (ring).....
- 30) He was sitting in the balcony when I (see)..... him.
- 31) Almost everyone (leave)..... the home by the time I (arrive).....

VI. Conjunctions.

- 32) At 9 am. yesterday, either Tom or his friends (fly)..... to Britain.
33) Not only John but also his two brothers (play)..... football every weekend.
34) Both Julia and her sister (go)..... to the party now.
35) At this time, not only her friends and I (read)..... books in library.

VII. Tag qusetions

- 36) Jack and Jill brought us some water,?
37) Nothing has changed in this town,?
38) The party starts at eight,?
39) She can't swim,?
40) This shirt is too big for me,?

VIII. Transformation

- 41) **Tom** had a lot of work to do. (Cleft sentence)
→ **It**
42) I was worried about **the entrance exam**. (Cleft sentence)
→ **It**
43) We are going on holiday **in August**. (Cleft sentence)
→ **It**
44) They sent **the children** many gifts. (Cleft sentence in the passive)
→ **It**
45) People all over the world speak English. (Cleft sentence in the passive)
→ **It**
46) My sandwich has cheese. My sandwich has ham. (**both ... and**)
→ **Both**
47) I haven't met my girlfriend's father. I haven't met her mother. (**neither.....nor**)
→ **I**
48) We can pay in cash or we can pay by cheque. (**either.....or**)
→ **Amy**.....
49) People think that someone started the fire deliberately. (**special passive voice**)
→ **Someone**
50) They report that many people are homeless after the food. (**special passive voice**)
→ **It**

Heal the World

Michael Jackson

There's a place in your heart
And I know that it is love
And this place could be much
Brighter than _____
And if you really try
You'll find there's no need to cry
In this place you'll feel
There's no hurt or _____
There are ways to get there
If you care enough for the living
Make a little space
Make a better _____

Heal the _____
Make it a better place
For you and for me
And the entire _____ race
There are people dying
If you care enough for the living
Make it a better place
For you and for me

If you want to know _____
There's love that cannot lie
Love is _____
It only cares of joyful giving
If we try we shall _____
In this bliss we cannot feel
Fear of dread
We stop existing and start living
The it feels that always
Love's enough for us growing
So make a better world
Make a better place

Heal the _____
Make it a better place
For you and for me

And the entire _____ race
There are people dying
If you care enough for the living
Make it a better place
For you and for me

And the dream we were conceived in
Will reveal a _____ face
And the world we once believed in
Will shine _____ in grace
Then why do we keep strangling life
Wound this earth, crucify its soul
Though it's plain to see
This world is heavenly
Be god's glow

We could fly so _____
Let our spirits never die
In my heart I feel you are all my _____
Create a world with no fear
Together we cry happy tears
See the _____ turn their swords into
plowshares

We could really get there
If you cared enough for the living
Make a little space
To make a better place

Heal the _____
Make it a better place
For you and for me
And the entire _____ race
There are people dying
If you care enough for the living
Make a better place for you and for me
There are people dying
If you care enough for the living
Make a better place for you and for me
You and for me

You Are Not Alone

Michael Jackson

Another day has gone. I'm _____ all alone
How could this be. You're not _____ with me
You never said goodbye. Someone tell me why
Did you have to go. And _____ my world so cold

Everyday I sit and ask myself
How did love slip away
Something _____ in my ear and says
That you are not alone. For I am here with you
Though you're far away. I am here to stay
But you are not alone. I am here with you
Though we're far apart. You're always in my heart
You are not alone
Alone, alone
Why, alone

Just the other night. I thought I heard you _____
Asking me to come. And _____ you in my arms
I can hear your prayers. Your burdens I will _____
But first I need your hand. Then forever can _____

Everyday I sit and ask myself
How did love slip away
Something _____ in my ear and says
That you are not alone. For I am here with you
Though you're far away. I am here to stay
But you are not alone. And I am here with you
Though we're far apart. You're always in my heart
For you are not alone

Whisper three words and I'll come runnin'
And I and girl you know that I'll be there
I'll be there

You are not alone. I am here with you
Though you're far away. I am here to stay
For you are not alone. I am here with you
Though we're far apart. You're always in my heart
For you are not alone (you are not alone)
For I am here with you (I am here with you)
Though you're far away (though you're far away)
(You and me) I am here to stay
For you are not alone (you are always in my heart)
For I am here with you though we're far apart
You're always in my heart

For you are not alone not alone, oh

Cry on My Shoulder

Deutschland sucht den Superstar

If the hero never comes to you
If you need someone, you're feeling _____
If you wait for love and you're alone
If you call your friends nobody's _____
You can run away but you can't hide
Through a storm and through a _____ night
Then I'll show you there's a destiny
The best things in life they are _____

But if you wanna cry. Cry on my shoulder
If you need someone. Who cares for you
If you're feeling sad. Your _____ gets colder
Yes I show you what real love can do

If your sky is grey oh, let me _____
There's a place in heaven where we'll go
If heaven is a million years away
Oh, just call me and I'll _____ your day
When the nights are gettin' cold and blue
When the days are gettin' _____ for you
I will always stay here by your side
I _____ you I'll never hide

But if you wanna cry. Cry on my shoulder
If you need someone. Who cares for you
If you're feeling sad. Your _____ gets colder
Yes I show you what real love can do

But if you wanna cry. Cry on my shoulder
If you need someone. Who cares for you
If you're feeling sad. Your _____ gets colder
Yes I show you what real love can do
What real love can do
What real love can do
What love can do
What love can do